Korean Language Guide

The following are the complete list of the lessons created so far in this Korean Language Guide.

• Welcome
• Korean Alphabet
• Sentence Order

Particles
• Topic Particle - 는 / 은
• Identifier Particle - 가 / 이
• Subject Particles - 는 / 은 and 가 / 이
• Additive Particle - 도
• Object Particle - 를 / 을
• Time / Place Particle - 에

Pronouns
• Pronouns (I, You) - 나, 저, 너, 당신
• Pronouns (He, She) - 그, 그녀, 그, 그
• Pronouns (He, She) - 애, 재, 개
• Pronouns (They) - 그들, 개들, 그분들
• Pronouns - This, It, That

Nouns
• Nouns - Present, Past
• Nouns - Nominalising
• Nouns - Nominalizing Verbs
• Nouns - Numbers and Counting

Adjectives
• Adjectives - Present, Past
• Adjectives - Polite [Present, Past]
• Adjectives - Descriptive
• Adjectives - Connective

Verbs
• Verbs - Present, Past
• Verbs - Polite [Present, Past]
• Verbs - Future [Will]
• Verbs - Continuous
• Verbs - Connective
• Verbs - Can
• Verbs - Have
• Verbs - Want
• Verbs - Descriptive I
• Verbs - Descriptive II
• Verbs - Speech

Adverbs
• Adverbs - 부사

Particles
• Particles - 께/에게/한데
• Particles - 으로/로
• Particles - 에서, 까지
• Particles - 만 [only]

Possessive
• Possessive - 의

Conjunctions
• Conjunctions - And
• Conjunctions - But [~지만]
• Conjunctions - But [는데/은데]
• Conjunctions - Because, So [~서]
• Conjunctions - Because [때문에]
• Conjunctions - If/Once [~면]
• Conjunctions - If/Once [~거든]
• Conjunctions - When [~때]
• Conjunctions - While [~며/면서]

5W1H

Advanced Grammar
• Comparatives & Superlatives
• Imperatives - 해, 하지만
• Have to - 해야 한다
• Allowed to - 해도 된다
• I like doing - 하는게 좋다, 하는걸 좋아한다
• I think - ~고 생각해 (Opinion)
• I think / It seems - 하는 거 같애 (General)
• I used to do - 했었어
• I used to do - 하던
• (I learned that) ~더라고
• (I found that) - ~던데
• I heard / You said - ~며
• There is / I have - 있다/있네

Special Expressions

• Are you doing? - ~는 거야? [Informal]
• Are you doing? - ~시는 거예요? [Polite]
• Are we doing? - 하는 거야 / 거예요?
• Go to do - ~러 가다
• To do something - ~기 위해
• Try doing - 해 보다
• Of course, I've done it before - 해봤죠
• Give the favour of doing - 해 주다
• Would you like to go? - 갈래요?
• Shall we do something? - 우리 뭐 할까?
• It's cold, isn't it? - 춥지요?
• Let's do it - 하자
• Easy to do / Difficult to do - ~기 쉽다 / ~기 어렵다
• I know how - 어떻게 하는지 알아
• I'm in the habit of - ~되면 ~게 돼요
• Because I'm - ~거든요
• I will go first - 먼저 가게

Phrases

• As I was doing - ~하다 보니깐

Other Lessons

• Addressing people
• Pronunciation
Learning the Korean Language for the First Time!

Please refer to Audio Recordings - Introduction, to learn about "WHY" listening to Korean is so important in learning Korean.

Welcome You All to the Korean Language Guide!

This blog was first created in 2006 as an experiment to help people who would like to learn Korean language online by providing some basic grammar lessons on Korean.

Over the years, I was able to put up more and more Korean language lessons online, and as of now, in January 2011, there are more than 70 online Korean lessons in this blog.

The principles in writing these online Korean language lessons have been that I remain intentional about making them as easy to understand and readily applicable in daily life as I can, and comprehensive enough to cover major points of the Korean language which includes both the Written and Spoken forms.

Now, what do I mean by written and spoken forms?

In Korean, the verb endings change depending on whether the language is used in writing or speech.

Note: In Korean grammar, the verbs come at the end of a sentence. For more on the sentence order, please read Sentence Order.

For example, "나는 학교에 갔다" which means "I went to school" is a written form, and "나는 학교에 갔어" is a spoken form.

- 나는 학교에 갔다 = I went to school (written form as in writing, books, diary and newspaper)
- 나는 학교에 갔어 = I went to school (spoken form as in conversations, movies and dramas)

As you can see, the ending of a verb changes from 갔다 to 갔어, both of which mean "went".

Therefore you'd write in one way but speak in a slightly different way. But don't be too alarmed at the difference, as there are simple patterns to it, and you'll get to learn them along the way.

It is also important to learn the differences in degrees of formalities in the Korean language. There are three major types in the degrees of formality:

- Informal
- Polite
- Honorific

In expressing the politeness in the speech, Korean differs from English in that the verb endings change depending on the age and rank of the person being addressed to and the social setting one finds oneself in. For example, when I'm asked, "Where are you going?" I might answer, "I'm going to school" in the following ways:
학교가 - [Informal, to people of the same age as me or younger than me, especially among close friends]
학교가요 - [Polite, to people older than me, and in formal social situations]
학교가는중입니다 - [Honorific, this is rarely used in normal conversations. I would say this type of speaking is only found in very formal settings such as on the news or in the army.]

You would use the polite form even when the person you're speaking to is of the same age as you or younger than you if you're not very close to the person and/or you're in a formal social setting. I'd say it's best to stick to the polite form first and then use the informal form later as you gain more understanding of the Korean language.

The major mark of the division is probably the age. The polite language is used to people above one's age and informal language to people equal to and below one's age.

However, generally, the polite language is generally used in many social situations and the informal language is usually used among close friends.

I am trying to lay out some basics to the language of Korean. However it'd be good at this point to dive into the lessons and learn them for yourself.

You can start reading the Korean language guide on this website, Learn Korean: LP's Korean Language Learning, from the top to bottom in the order as it's designed to guide you from the basics to intermediate and advanced Korean lessons.

Before you go, here is a bit of history of 한글 (Hangeul, the Korean alphabet):

한글 (the Korean alphabet) was invented by Sejong the Great in the 15th century. Before that time, people used Hanja (the equivalent of the Chinese characters) which was not only difficult to learn but was also considerably different to the Korean grammar and sentence order.

한글 is a phonetic writing system which means that the words correspond to pronunciation.

The English alphabet is phonetic whereas the Chinese characters are not. If you learn the English alphabet, you can read an English writing fairly well although you may not understand the meaning.

Korean is even more phonetic than that of English and many other languages, in that each consonant and vowel in Korean mostly have only one sound.

For example,

• ㄴ = n
• ㅏ = a (as in car and mama, short sound)

ㄴ + ㅏ = 나 [na] (which means "I" as in "I" am Luke)
Following the guide for the Korean language down the column on the right-hand of the page, we're now moving onto learning the sounds of the consonants and vowels of 한글.

You'll learn to write and pronounce each of these consonants and vowels, and how to form a character in this next lesson.

Keep on reading!
I hope you enjoy this journey of learning a new language!
I think it's always exciting to learn a new language! ;D

Luke

References

The Korean Alphabet

Learning Korean for the first time!

Hangeul or 한글 (the Korean alphabet) literally means "the Korean writing."

In 한글, the Korean alphabet, consists of 14 consonants and 10 vowels.

• Cosonants: ㄱ ㄴ ㄷ ㄹ ㅁ ㅂ ㅅ ㅇ ㅈ ㅊ ㅋ ㅌ ㅍ ㅎ
• Vowels:ㅏ ㅑ ㅓ ㅕ ㅗ ㅛ ㅜ ㅠ ㅡ ㅣ

In addition, there are 5 double consonants and 11 double vowels.

• Double consonants:ㄲ ㄸ ㅃ ㅆ ㅉ
• Double vowels:ㅐ ㅒ ㅔ ㅖ ㅘ ㅙ ㅚ ㅝ ㅞ ㅟ ㅢ

Additionally, there are 11 final double consonants.

• Final double consonants:ㄳ ㄴㄵ ㄶ ㄺ ㄻ ㄼ ㄽ ㄾ ㄿ ㅀ ㅄ

Please also refer to the audio recording of different Korean consonant-vowel combinations that I produced with my own voice, here, Korean alphabet - Consonants and Vowels.

You will get to learn these basic consonants and vowels, learning how to read, write and pronounce.

Click on the alphabet to listen to their corresponding pronunciations.
(Provided by Korean language learning online, Sogang University)

자음[Consonants]

ㄱ = g
ㄴ = n
ㄷ = d
ㄹ = l, r (ㄹ is a sound somewhere between l and r)
ㅁ = m
ㅂ = b
ㅅ = s
ㅇ = "no sound" when used as a first consonant, "ng" when used as a final consonant.
ㅈ = j
ㅊ = ch
ㅋ = k
ㅌ = t
ㅍ = p
ㅎ = h

모음[Vowels]

ㅏ = a
ㅑ = ya
ㅓ = eo
쌍자음 [Double consonants]

ㄲ = gg Click on the link to hear the difference between the sounds of ㄱ, ㅋ and ㅋ.
ㄸ = dd Note the difference in sounds; ㄷ, ㄸ and ㅌ.
ㅃ = bb Note the difference in sounds; ㅂ, ㅃ and ㅍ.
ㅆ = ss Note the difference in sounds; ㅅ and ㅆ
ㅉ = jj Note the difference in sounds; ㅈ, ㅉ and ㅊ

More links: ㄲ, ㄸ, ㅃ, ㅆ, ㅉ

쌍모음 [Double Vowels]

ㅐ = ae
ㅒ = yae (rarely used)
ㅔ = e
ㅖ = ye
ㅘ = wa
ㅙ = wae
ㅚ = oe
ㅝ = wo
ㅞ = we (rarely used)
ㅢ = wi
ㅟ = wi

• How to form a character

There are two ways of making a character, using the consonants and vowels as building blocks.

1. Initial consonant + Vowel
2. Initial consonant + Vowel + Final consonant

1. Examples
   • 가 = ㄱ +ㅏ = ga
   • 난 =ㄴ +ㅏ = neo
   • 도 = ㄷ +ㅗ = do
   • 루 = 룹 +ㅗ = lu/ru
   • 무 =ㅁ +ㅗ = meu
   • 비 =ㅂ +ㅣ = bi

2. Examples
   • 각 = ㄱ +ㅏ +ㅣ = gag
   • 논 =ㄴ +ㅏ +ㄴ = neon
   • 뮨 =ㅁ +ㅓ +ㅅ = dod
Characters with final consonants of ㄱ, ㅋ and ㅋ, all sound the same. Thus 각, 겪 and 겪 will sound exactly the same.

For example,

군, 엘, 밖 Their final consonants all sound the same. Click on the links to hear.

Now, below is a list of the final consonants and their respective sounds.

• ㄱ/ㄲ/ㅋ = ㄱ
• ㅂ/ㅃ/ㅍ = ㅂ
• ㄷ/ㅌ/ㅅ/ㅆ/ㅈ/ㅊ/ㅎ = ㄷ
• ㄴ = ㄴ
• ㄹ = ㄹ
• ㅁ = ㅁ
• ㅇ = ㅇ

For example,

• 낚시 [낙시] = fishing
• 부엌 [부억] = kitchen
• 앞 [앞] = front
• 씨앗 [씨앋] = seed
• 낮 [낮] = day

For a more detailed explanation and audio files, click here.

When the initial consonant of second and/or third characters is ㅇ, for example, 돌이 and 만악이, the sound of the final consonant of each letter is pronounced with the next vowel. Because ㅇ has no sound, 돌이 is pronounced as 도리 and 만악이 as 마나기. These are just made-up words to show you how these work.

• 돌이 [도리]
• 만악이 [마나기]

For more examples on this pronunciation, click on the link.

쌍받침 [Final double consonants]

There are also 11 additional final double consonants. Their sounds are as follows. As you can see, the first consonant of the double consonants is pronounced. (except ㄹㄹ = ㄱ, ㄹㅁ = ㅁ and ㄹㅂ = ㅂ) I do not recommend that you learn these exhaustively right away because that is a hard work and I rarely employed them in my grammar lessons anyway. So it would be better to come back to these when you come across them from time to time.

• ㄳ = ㄱ
• ㄵ = ㄴ
• ㄶ = ㄴ
• ㄺ = ㄱ
• ㄻ = ㅁ
• ㅼ = ㅌ
• ㄽ = ㅅ
• ㄻ = ㅎ
• ㅽ = ㄱ
Eg.

莎 [삭] = amount
앉다 [앉따] = sit
많다 [많다] = many
읽다 [읽따] = read
삶다 [삶따] = boil
넓다 [넓따] = spacious
외곬 [외毛泽] = a single way
할따 [할따] = lick
읍따 [읍따] = recite (a poem)
잃다 [잃따] = lose (a thing)
값 [값] = price

Excellent pronunciation lessons by Sogang University (Korean language learning online)

Source: http://korean.sogang.ac.kr/

Also, check out the Korean Wiki Project for additional explanations of the Korean consonants and vowels and respective pronunciations.

For writing practices,
  • Consonants
  • Vowels
  • Consonants + Vowels

Sources:
Slow but STEADY: http://cyjn.com/165
키드앤틴, KidnTeen: http://www.kidnteen.com/hannnum/han.asp
**Sentence Order**

Please refer to [Audio Recordings - Sentence Order](#), to listen to the sentences used in this lesson.

In regards to the order of a sentence, there are four basic types in Korean. These are:

- **S + N**
- **S + V**
- **S + A**
- **S + O + V**

* S = subject, N = noun, A = adjective, O = object and V = verb.

The tense of a sentence is determined by the last part of a sentence, namely, by a noun, verb or adjective.

In Korean, adjectives function like verbs in that they can be converted to different forms to determine the tense of a sentence.

For example,

- In English, the past tense of "go" is "went."
- In Korean, the past tense of "가다" (gada, go) is "갔다" (gatta, went).

The verbs function in the same way in English and Korean.

However, in the case of adjectives, the past tense of "good" in English is not "gooded" but it is written, "was good."

Contrary to this, in Korean, "좋다" (jota, good) has a past tense form of "좋았다" (joatta, was good).

Compare:

- In English, "good" (present) → "was good" (past)
- In Korean, "좋다" (present) → "좋았다" (past)

Therefore, the adjectives in Korean function like verbs in that they can be converted to a past tense or future tense, or any other tense forms.

This conversion of a verb(or adjective) to its past, future, present continuous or past continuous tense forms is called a verb (or adjective) "conjugation."

Before proceeding to the explanation section below, I recommend that you read the "particles" alongside this post.

To understand Korean grammar, it is crucial that you become familiar with the concept of a distinct part of speech called, "particles."

Particles are function words that indicate what the subject or object is in a sentence.
For example,

- 는/은 is a topic particle
- 가/이 is a identifier particle
- 를/을 is an object particle

For more information and explanation on particles, please refer to (Particles - 는, 도, 률, 가, 에).

Now, let's have a look at the four main types of Korean sentences.

Note: S = Subject, N = Noun, V = Verb, A = Adjective, O = Object

1. S + N
   • 나는 학생이다 = I am a student
   • 리사는 선생님이다 = Lisa is a teacher
   • 앤드류는 의사였다 = Andrew was a doctor
   • 저는 중학생이에요 = I am a middle school student [polite spoken form]

For more explanations on the S + N pattern, please read Nouns - Present, Past.

나 = I
학생 = student
리사 = Lisa
선생님 = teacher
앤드류 = Andrew
의사 = doctor
저 = I (polite)
중학생 = a middle school student

2. S + V
   • 주영은 달린다 = Ju-young runs [written form]
   • 주영은 달려요 = Ju-young runs [polite spoken form]
   • 주영은 힘차게 달린다 = Ju-young vigorously runs

*An adverb comes before a verb.

주영 = Ju-Young (a Korean male name)
달리다 = run
d달려 = run [spoken form]
d달려요 = run [polite spoken form]
힘차게 = vigorously

For more information and explanations on verbs, please read Verbs - Present, Past and Verbs - Polite [Present, Past].

3. S + A
   • 그는 크다 = He is big
• 그녀는 작다 = She is small
• 앤은 예쁘다 = Anne is pretty [written form]
• 앤은 정말 예뻐요 = Anne is really pretty [polite spoken form]
• 산이 아름답다 = The mountain is beautiful
• 날씨가 정말 좋다 = The weather is very good

그 = he
크다 = big
그녀 = she
작다 = small
앤 = Anne
정말 = really, very
예쁘다 = pretty
산 = mountain
아름답다 = beautiful
날씨 = weather
좋다 = good

For more information and explanations on adjectives, please read, Adjectives - Present, Past, Adjectives - Polite [Present, Past] and Adjectives - Connective.

4. S + O + V
• 나는 사과를 먹었다 = I ate an apple.
• 지성은 물을 마신다 = Ji-sung drinks water.
• 새들이 노래를 부른다 = The birds are singing songs.
• 안나는 대학을 다닌다 = Anna attends college (university) [written form]
• 안나는 대학을 다녀요 = Anna attends college (university) [spoken form]
• 영희는 어제 정원에 꽃을 심었다 = Young-hee planted a flower in the garden yesterday.

*Notice that the time(어젯밤) and place(정원에) are inserted between S and O.

나 = I
사과 = apple
먹었다 = ate
물 = water
마신다 = drink
새 = a bird
새들 = birds
노래 = song
부른다 = sing
다니다 = attend [written form]
다녀요 = attend [polite spoken form]
어제 = yesterday
정원 = garden
꽃 = flower
심다 = plant (verb)
In addition, unlike English, it is quite common to leave out the subject in a sentence in Korean. When the subject is known by the readers or speakers, it is often left out. Therefore, depending on a situation or context, it is OK to write or speak without beginning the sentence with a subject.

A subject may not be used in a sentence if it is known who or what the subject is. So, the sentences below are also correct and it is common in spoken Korean (conversations).

- 학생이다 = (am/is) a student
- 선생님이다 = (am/is) a teacher
- 의사였다 = was a doctor
- 중학생이에요 = (am/is) a middle school student

- 달린다 = runs
- 힘차게 달렸다 = vigorously ran

- 크다 = (am/is/are) big
- 작다 = (am/is/are) small
- 정말 좋아 = (am/is/are) really good [spoken form]

- 사과를 먹었다 = ate an apple
- 물을 마셨어 = drank water [spoken form]
- 노래를 불렀어 = sang songs [spoken form]
- 어제 꽃을 심었어요 = planted a flower yesterday [polite spoken form]

For more help with the particles, please refer to the following posts:
- Particles - 뒤/에/에한테
- Particles -으로/로
- Particles -에서,까지
- Particles -만 [only]
- Possessive -의
Learn Korean Language: Particles

Particles are functional words that do not have any meaning in themselves.

They are like helpers in that they are attached to the end of nouns to indicate what that noun is and how it functions in a sentence.

The following links show the list of most common particles used in Korean language.

● **Particles - 는 / 은**
● **Particles - 가 / 이**
● **Subject Particles**
● **Particles - 도**
● **Particles - 를 / 을**
● **Particles - 에**
**Topic Particle - 는 / 은**

Please refer to [Korean Listening Exercise - Topic Particle 는/은](#) for the audio recording of the sentences found in this lesson.

Particles are functional words that do not have any meaning in themselves. They are like helpers in that they are attached to the end of nouns to indicate what that noun is and how it functions in a sentence.

This particles section is divided into several parts.

These are:

• 는/은 - **Topic particle**
• 가/이 - **Identifier particle**
• 도 - **Additive particle**
• 를/을 - **Object particle**
• 에 - **Time/place particle**

**Note:** 는/은 and 가/이 are 'Subject particles.' The explanations are given in the 'Subject Particles' section.

Please have a look at the following examples to learn how particles are used in sentences.

For example,

• 나는 학생이다 = I am a student

는, the topic particle, is attached to the end of 나, which means the pronoun "I", to show that the topic is about "I" or the subject is "I".

Here is another example,

• 나도 학생이다 = I am a student, too.

In this sentence, 도, the **additive particle**, is attached to 나 to show that in addition to a person or people who are students, "I", too, am a student.

Now, let us go through each of these particles.

** 는/은 [Topic Particle]**

The first particle, we'll learn, is 는/은, the topic particle. 는/은 is used for a subject or topic of a sentence. 는 is used for nouns without a final consonant, and 은 for nouns with a final consonant.

Let me explain,

• 나는 = I am
• 사람 = A person is

나 consists of ㄴ + ㅏ
• ㄴ = n (an initial consonant)
• ㅏ = a (a vowel)

As you can see, 나 is a word without a final consonant, therefore 는 is attached to it.

On the other hand, 사람 which means 'a person' has 람 as a final character, and 람 consists of ㄹ + ㅏ + ㅁ
• ㄹ = r,l (an initial consonant)
• ㅏ = a (a vowel)
• ㅁ = m (a final consonant)

사람 is a word with a final consonant. Therefore, 은 is attached to it.

The reason for these two different types of the topic particle, 는/은, is that for words with a final consonant, it is easier to pronounce them with 은 rather 는.

Compare these two pronunciations,
• 사람은 = sa-ram-nun
• 사람은 = sa-ram-un → sa-ra-mun [사라믄]

As you can see, 사람은 is more rigid and awkward to pronounce, whereas 사람은 is more fluid and easy to pronounce. 사람은 is actually pronounced 사라믄. The final consonant of 람, which is ㅁ, is transferred to 은 to make it sound更好地.

(사람은 sounds a bit like "Sarah Moon" whereas 사람은 may sound like "Saram Noon".)

Listen to the pronunciations for yourselves in the Google Translate.

The following are example sentences using 는/은, the topic particle.
• 나는 학생이다 = I am a student
• 그는 친절하다 = He is kind
• 이것은 연필이다 = This is a pencil
• 하늘은 높다 = The sky is high
• 그녀는 공부하다 = She studies
• 존은 갔다 = John went
• 영수는 먹었다 = Young-su ate

나 = I (pronoun)
학생 = a student
그 = he
친절하다 = kind
이것 = this
연필 = pencil
하늘 = sky
높다 = high
그녀 = she
공부하다 = study
존 = John
가다 = go
영수 = Young-su (a male name)
먹다 = eat

Use Google Translate to listen the pronunciations of these words.

Note: There are no articles in the parts of speech in Korean. "A, an and the" which are used to identify and specify a noun in English and other languages are absent in Korean grammar.

Continue to the next section:
• Identifier Particle - 가 / 이
**Identifier Particle - 가/이**

Please refer to [Korean Listening Exercise - Identifier Particle 가/이](#) for the audio recording of the sentences found in this lesson.

가/이 is used similarly as 는/은 in that they indicate a subject but 가/이 is used when it is necessary to identify the person or thing that is talked about in a sentence.

For example,
- •나는 샀다 = I bought
- •내가 샀다 = I bought

Note: 나 is changed to 내 when it is used before 가.

Both of these two sentences mean "I bought" but 내가 샀다 puts more emphasis on the subject of the sentence, "I".

In the sentence, 내가 샀다, it is more concerned about 'who' bought rather than 'what' I did.

On the other hand, 나는 샀다, is more concerned about 'what' I did.
- •내가 샀다 = I bought [It wasn't anyone else but I who bought]
- •나는 샀다 = I bought [I bought rather than doing something else]

It is similar to the way in English where a person stresses a certain word to give it more emphasis or importance.

For example,
- •Who bought a new t-shirt?
  •내가 샀어 = I bought it.

**Note:** It is incorrect to say, 나는 샀어, because the person is asking about who bought a new t-shirt rather than asking about what they did.
- •What did you do in the park?
  •나는 꽤 = I slept (I took a nap)

**Note:** The person may be asking to several people about what they did in the park. One person might say they took a stroll while another person may have had lunch there. But as for me, what I did was 'sleeping'.

Therefore,
- •나는 꽤 = I slept

It is wrong to say 내가 꽤 in this case because the person is not asking about who slept but what they did in the park. If the person asked me, 'Who slept in the park?', I would answer, 내가 꽤 or 마크가 꽤 (Mark slept).
The identifier particle, 가/이, identifies the subject of a sentence. 가/이 is concerned about who did the things asked.

Like the 는/은 example above, 가 is used for words without a final consonant and 이 for words with a final consonant.

Here are example sentences:
• 내가 마셨다 = I drank (It wasn't anyone else but me)
• 동생이 먹었다 = Younger brother/sister ate (It wasn't someone else but them)
• 민지가 왔다 = Min-ji came (It wasn't some other person but Min-ji)
• 안토니가 갔다 = Anthony went (It wasn't some other person but Anthony)
• 저것이 한강이야 = That is the Han River
• 빌딩이 높다 = The building is high
• 공원이 넓다 = The park is large/spacious

마시다 = drink
동생 = younger brother/sister
먹다 = eat
민지 = Min-ji (a female name)
오다 = come
안토니 = Anthony
가다 = go
저것 = that
한강 = the Han River (in Seoul)
빌딩 = a building
높다 = high
공원 = a park

넓다 = spacious, large

Use Google Translate to listen the pronunciations of these words.
Subject Particles - 는 / 은 and 가 / 이

 는/은 and 가/이 both are used for the subject of a sentence but 는/은 introduces a topic or a subject whereas 가/이 identifies a subject.

In addition to their differences already explored above, here is another big difference between the two particles.

The topic particle, 는/은, is used in cases when we make a general or factual statement whereas 가/이 is not.

For example,
•치타는 빠르다 = A cheetah is fast
•치타는 느리다 = A cheetah is slow (This would be a wrong statement)

However, if you visited a zoo and saw a cheetah who seems to move very slowly, you might say,
•치타가 느리다 = (That) cheetah is slow

So the identifier particle, 가/이, indicates a certain person or thing that the speaker and listener know or are aware of. In this case, it would be that cheetah in the zoo.

Here is another example,
•바다는 푸르다 = The sea is blue
•바다는 까맣다 = The sea is black (In general, this is a wrong statement.)

But say, you saw the sea at night and you may exclaim,
•바다가 까맣다! = The sea is black!

The sea in this sentence is identified as a particular sea at night, and both the speaker and listener know which sea is being talked about. This is not a general statement. Therefore the identifier particle, 가/이, is used in this case.

Of course, 바다가 푸르다 is also perfectly acceptable. However, the difference is that the sea in this sentence is also a particular sea that is known by both the speaker and the listener.
•바다는 푸르다 = The sea is blue (A general statement)
•바다가 푸르다 = The sea is blue (The sea is identified and known by the speaker and listener)

It's similar to the way articles are used in English.

For example,
•An apple is red = 사과는 빨갛다 (A general or factual statement about an apple)
•The apple is red = 사과가 빨갛다 (A particular apple that the speaker identifies and indicates to the listener)
Additive Particle – 도

Please refer to Korean Listening Exercise - Additive Particle 도 for the audio recording of the sentences found in this lesson.

The additive particle, 도, is similar to subject particles 는/은 and 가/이 in that it is used for a subject (or topic). However, 도 adds the meaning of 'too' or 'also' to a subject.

Here are example sentences:
• 나도 학생이다 = I am a student, too
• 그도 친절하다 = He is kind, too
• 이것도 연필이다 = This is a pencil, too
• 하늘도 높다 = The sky is high, too
• 그녀도 공부한다 = She studies, too
• 존도 왔다 = John went, too
• 영수도 먹었다 = Young-su ate, too

As a further explanation, please have a look at the following example:
• 다윗은 왕이었다 = David was a king
• 솔로몬도 왕이었다 = Solomon was a king, too

도 always refers to the subject. For example, 솔로몬도 왕이었다 describes Solomon in terms of the fact that he was a king, too. Not only was David a king but Solomon was also a king.

다윗 = David
왕 = a king
솔로몬 = Solomon

Here is another example,
• 제니는 나갔어 = Jenny went outside
• 유리도 나갔어 = Yuri went outside, too

제니 = Jenny
나가다 = go outside, leave
유리 = Yuri

As you can see, 도 is used when one wants talk about the same quality or description about a different subject.

When we want to talk about additive qualities and/or descriptions about the same subject, 또한 is used.

For example,
• 다윗은 양치기였다 = David was a shepherd.
• 다윗은 또한 왕이었다 = David was also a king.
The two sentences above both describe a certain thing about the same subject, 다윗, and 또한 refers to the rest of the sentence rather than the subject. 또한 왕이었다 describes a fact that David "was also a king." Therefore David was both a shepherd and king.

또한 is used to give an additive quality or description about the same subject.

Here is one more example,

• 제니는 대학생이다 = Jenny is a college (university) student
• 제니는 또한 음악 선생님이다 = Jenny is also a music teacher

Jenny is both a college student and music teacher.

Note: In spoken Korean, 또 is usually used instead of 또한.

• 제니는 대학생이야 = Jenny is a college (university) student
• 제니는 또 음악 선생님이야 = Jenny is also a music teacher
Object Particle - 를 / 을

The object particle, 를/을, is attached to an object which the verb describes.

Here are example sentences:

- 나는 라면을 먹었다 = I ate noodles [Literally, noodles 을 ate]
- 책을 읽었다 = read a book
- 콜라를 마셨다 = drank coke
- TV 를 봤다 = watched TV
- 옷을 입었다 = wore clothes
- 집을 지었다 = built a house
- 케익을 만들었다 = made a cake

나 = I  
라면 = noodles  
먹다 = eat  
책 = a book  
읽다 = read  
콜라 = coke  
마시다 = drink  
보다 = see, watch  
옷 = clothes  
입다 = wear  
집 = house  
짓다 = build  
케익 = a cake  
만들다 = make

The usage difference between 를 and 을 is that 를 is used for nouns without a final consonant, and 을 for nouns with a final consonant for the pronunciation's sake.

- 사진을 찍었다 = took a photo  
- 나무를 심었다 = planted a tree  
- 빵을 샀다 = bought some bread  
- 차를 팔았다 = sold a car  
- 강을 건넜다 = crossed a river  
- 다리를 지나서 = passed a bridge  
- 숙제를 했다 = did homework

사진 = a photo  
찍다 = take (a photo)  
나무 = a tree  
심다 = plant (verb)  
빵 = bread  
사다 = buy  
차 = a car  
팔다 = sell
강 = a river
건너다 = cross (verb, motion)
다리 = bridge
지나다 = pass (verb, motion)
숙제 = homework
하다 = do
Time / Place Particle - 에

Please refer to Korean Listening Exercise - Time/Place Particle 에 for the audio recording of the sentences found in this lesson.

The Time/Place Particle, 에, is used for any words related to time and place.

The 에 particle phrase is usually placed at the beginning of a sentence after a subject.

샘 = Sam
한국 = Korea
가다 = go
준수 = Jun-su
5 월 = May
오다 = come

•샘은 한국에 갔다 = Sam went to Korea [Sam, to Korea, went]
•준수는 5 월에 왔다 = Jun-su came in May [Jun-su, in May, came]

Note: 1 월 is January, 2 월 is February and so on.

You can also make long sentences like the following examples:
•샘은 작년 10 월 가을에 한국에 갔다 = Sam went to Korea last year in October during the autumn season [Sam, last year, in October, in Autumn, to Korea, went]
•준수는 2000 년도 여름에 호주에 왔다 = Jun-su came to Australia in summer 2000. [Jun-su, in 2000, in summer, to Australia, came]

작년 = last year
10 월 = October
가을 = autumn
2000 년도 = in the year 2000
여름 = summer
호주 = Australia

Note: 에 is used for words both with or without a final consonant.
•학교에 = to school
•병원에 = to hospital

Please note also that when 에 is used as a Place Particle, it is usually used with 'go' and 'come' to indicate a place to which you're going or coming, and 에 functions like 'to' in English. For example, 공원에 = to a park, 영국에 = to Britain and 공항에 = to the airport.

When you want to say you did something at a particular place 'for a certain period of time,' 에서 is used for that location or place. In this case, the function of 에서 is similar to "in, at or on" in English. For example,
• 공원에서 놀았다 = played (had fun) at the park [At the park, (we) played (had fun)]
• 영국에서 지냈다 = stayed in Britain [In Britain, (I) stayed]
• 공항에서 기다렸다 = waited at the airport [At the airport, (we) waited]

공원 = a park
놀다 = play, have fun
영국 = Britain
지내다 = stay
공항 = airport
기다리다 = wait

However, in the case of 'was', you can use 에 instead of 에서 for some strange reason I do not know. The following two sentences mean exactly the same.
• 영국에서 있었다 = I was in Britain
• 영국에 있었다 = I was in Britain

But in the case of other verbs, 에 is not allowed.
• 공원에 놀았다
• 영국에 지냈다
• 공항에 기다렸다

Here are a few more examples:
• 시골에 갔다 = went to a countryside
• 친구가 병원에 방문했다 = A friend of mine came (to visit me) to hospital
• 집에 있었다 = was home
• 대학에서 강의를 들었다 = listen to a lecture at the university
• 많은 사람들이 놀이 공원에 왔다 = A lot of people came to the theme park
• 아침에 시리얼을 먹었다 = I ate cereal in the morning [In the morning, I ate cereal]
• 오후 2시에 비가 내렸다 = It started raining at 2 o'clock in the afternoon [Lit. The rain fell]

시골 = countryside
가다 = go
친구 = a friend
병원 = a hospital
방문 = a visit
오다 = come
방문오다 = came to visit
집 = home, house
있다 = be
대학 = college, university
강의 = a lecture
들다 = listen, hear
많다 = a lot, many
사람 = a person
사람들 = people (들 is attached to a noun to make it plural)
놀이 공원 = a theme park
아침 = morning
시리얼 = cereal
먹다 = eat
오후 = afternoon, pm
2시 = 2 o'clock (1시 is 1 o'clock, 7시 is 7 o'clock and so on)
비 = rain
내리다 = fall down
Learn Korean Language: Pronouns

Unlike English, pronouns are not essential for sentences to be grammatically correct in Korean language, and in many instances, the pronouns can be omitted from normal sentences all together.

It is also important to notice that some pronouns (e.g. 당신, 그, 그녀) are much less frequently used than other pronouns in spoken Korean.

For more information, please refer to the following links showing the list of most common pronouns used in Korean language.

- Pronouns (I, You) - 나, 저, 너, 당신
- Pronouns (He, She) - 그, 그녀, 개, 그분
- Pronouns (He, She) - 애, 재, 개
- Pronouns (They) - 그들, 개들, 그분들
- Pronouns- This, It, That
Pronouns (I, You) - 나, 저, 너, 당신

In this lesson, we are going to learn about pronouns, especially, "I and You," then "He, She and They," and how their forms are changed depending on the degree of politeness.

Let's start with "I":

**Informal form (나, I)**

- 나 = I
- 나는 = I + 는 (Topic particle)
  - 난 (usually in spoken Korean)
- 내가 = I + 가 (Identifier particle)
- 나도 = I + 도 (Additive particle)
- 나를 = I + 를 (Object particle)
  - 날 (usually in spoken Korean)
- 내 = my
- 내 것 = mine (written Korean)
  - 내 껌 (usually in spoken Korean)

**Note:** 나 becomes 내 when combined with 가 (Identifier particle)

**Polite form (저, I)**

- 저 = I
- 저는 = I + 는 (Topic particle)
  - 전 (usually in spoken Korean)
- 제가 = I + 가 (Identifier particle)
- 저도 = I + 도 (Additive particle)
- 저를 = I + 를 (Object particle)
  - 젤 (usually in spoken Korean)
- 제 = my
- 제 것 = mine (written Korean)
  - 제 껌 (usually in spoken Korean)

Now for "You":

Note: This part is not fully transcribed in the image. It likely continues with the formal and informal forms of "You" pronouns in Korean, similar to the "I" forms.
Informal form (너, You)

• 너 = You
• 너는 = You + 는 (Topic particle)
  • 녀 (usually in spoken Korean)
• 넬가 = You + 가 (Identifier particle) (written Korean)
  • 달가 (usually in spoken Korean)
• 넬도 = You + 도 (Additive particle)
• 넬를 = You + 를 (Object particle)
  • 넬 (usually in spoken Korean)
• 네 = your (written Korean)
  • 녀 (usually in spoken Korean)
• 네 겟 = yours (written Korean)
  • 녀 겟 (usually in spoken Korean)

Polite form (당신, You)

• 당신 = You
• 당신은 = You + 은 (Topic particle)
• 당신이 = You + 이 (Identifier particle)
• 당신도 = You + 도 (Additive particle)
• 당신을 = You + 를 (Object particle)
• 당신 = your
• 당신 겟 = yours (written Korean)
  • 당신 겟 (usually in spoken Korean)

Note: Just a word of caution, 당신 is very infrequently used when addressing someone in spoken Korean because it has a nuance of confrontation, and it can be offensive when used wrongly. Therefore I advise that you do not use 당신 at all when speaking in Korean!

In Korean, if you want address someone directly, it's more common to use their designated position or status in society, for example, 선생님 (teacher), 사장님 (Head of any company), 사모님 (Wife of any respectable man), 아저씨 (middle-aged man), 아줌마 (middle-aged woman), 할아버지 (elderly man), 할머니 (elderly woman)

Note: Doctors are called 의사 선생님 (Doctor-teacher) or just 선생님 (teacher), and any person can be called 선생님 if you learned something from that person and even if someone is not your teacher, you may choose to call him/her 선생님 if you respect them, and don't have any other particular to name to call them.
However, please let me make this clear that it seems that 당신 is more frequently used in songs and dramas, and 당신 in songs do not sound confrontational, and offensive at all. Actually they sound very endearing in some songs for some reason. But in dramas, 당신 can still be confrontational and offensive, and so it's more likely used in the scenes where characters have verbal arguments.

You may also hear 그 쪽 when someone is addressed. 그 쪽 is used in place of 당신 (because 당신 is avoided in spoken Korean as explained above). 그 쪽 literally means "that side." 그 쪽 is not used frequently at all. It's used between people who share a similar position or status in society, and have just met and are not sure how to address the other person.

E.g.

• Person A: 점심 드셨어요? (Have you had lunch?)
• Person B: 아뇨. 아직이요. 그쪽은요? (No, not yet, what about you?)
Pronouns (He, She) - 그, 그녀, 개, 그분

This is the second part of "Pronouns" lesson.

For the first part on "I and You - 나, 저, 너, 당신", please click on the link.

Before I start listing different forms of "He and She" I must say that they're very infrequently used in actual spoken Korean.

In Korean, when people refer to someone, they mostly use a person's name, their position or status in society, or omit it altogether if people talking to each other already know who they're talking about.

However, I include the following list for the sake of completeness. It is likely that the following are more frequently used in songs, dramas, and books.

• Note: Among the pronouns listed below, one that is more frequently used in spoken Korean than others would be 개 which means "he or she" depending on the context.

• 개 is a very informal form of "he and she," and so, it is usually used among close friends, and when referring to other people of similar age in a close social network.

• Therefore, 개 would probably never be used when referring to someone who is older or senior than you.

• Even when you're referring to someone who is younger or junior than you, you would probably avoid using 개 if some degree of respect is expected for each other in a given conversation. Alternatively, you'd use that person's name, or use the full version of 개, which is 그 아이.

• Note:
  • 개 = 그 아이
  • 개 is a contracted form of 그애 which means "that guy/gal/boy/girl."
  • 애 is a contracted form of 아이 which means "a child."

Informal form (그, He)

• 그 = He
  • 개 (usually in spoken Korean)
    • 개 is a contracted form of 그애 which means "that guy/gal/boy/girl"

• 그는 = He + 는 (Topic particle)
  • 개 (usually in spoken Korean)
• 겜 is a contracted form of 개는

• 그가 = He + 가 (Identifier particle)

• 그도 = He + 도 (Additive particle)

• 그를 = He + 를 (Object particle)
  • 겜 (usually in spoken Korean)
  • 겜 is a contracted form of 개를

• 그의 = his
  • 개 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그의 것 = his (written Korean)
  • 개꺼 (usually in spoken Korean)

Informal form (그녀, She)

• 그녀 = She
  • 개 (usually in spoken Korean)
  • 개 is a contracted form of 그 애 which means "that guy/gal/boy/girl"

• 그녀는 = She + 는 (Topic particle)
  • 겜 (usually in spoken Korean)
  • 겜 is a contracted form of 개는

• 그녀가 = She + 가 (Identifier particle)

• 그녀도 = She + 도 (Additive particle)

• 그녀를 = She + 를 (Object particle)
  • 겜 (usually in spoken Korean)
  • 겜 is a contracted form of 개를

• 그녀의 = her
  • 개 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그녀의 것 = hers (written Korean)
  • 개꺼 (usually in spoken Korean)
Polite form (그분, He/She)

• 그분 = He/She
• 그분은 = He/She + 은 (Topic particle)
• 그분이 = He/She + 이 (Identifier particle)
• 그분도 = He/She + 도 (Additive particle)
• 그분을 = He/She + 를 (Object particle)

• 그분의 = his/her
  • 그분 (의 is usually omitted in spoken Korean)

• 그분의 것 = his/hers (written Korean)
  • 그분꺼 (usually in spoken Korean)
Pronouns (He, She) - 애, 재, 개

Following the previous post, Pronouns (He, She) - 그, 그녀, 개, 그분, we're going to learn more about the various ways in which "He and She" are used in spoken Korean.

There are three basic ways to refer to someone (he or she), namely 애, 재 and 개. They are used in a similar way to Pronouns- This, It, That.

- 애 = He or She (This person)
- 재 = He or She (That person)
- 개 = He or She (The person we're talking about who is not present here)

애, 재 and 개 are the personal equivalents of 이것, 저것, 그것 which are used to refer to "things or inanimate objects."

Example sentences:

- 효민: 톰 안녕, 애는 안나야
  - Hyo-min: Hey, Tom. This (person) is Anna.

- 톰: 효민아 안녕, 안녕 안나, 만나서 반가워.
  - Tom: Hey Hyo-min, Hi Anna, nice to meet you.

- 톰: 자기 대학빌딩 앞에 재는 누구야?
  - Tom: Who is that (person) in front of the university building over there?

- 효민: 아닌데, 재는 성준이야.
  - Hyo-min: Well, that (person) is Sung-jun.

  - Tom: Oh, right. And, who was that person (not present)? The guy we had a dinner together with in the city a while ago.

Note: As has been explained in the previous post,

- 애, 재 and 개 are very informal forms of "he and she," and so, it is usually used among close friends, and when referring to other people of similar age in a close social network.

- Therefore, 애, 재 and 개 would probably never be used when referring to someone who is older or senior than you.

- Even when you're referring to someone who is younger or junior than you, you would probably avoid using 애, 재 and 개 if some degree of respect is expected for each other in a
given conversation. Alternatively, you'd use that person's name, or use the full version of 개, which is 그 아이.
Pronouns (They) - 그들, 개들, 그분들

As I have explained in the previous post, "He and She" are very infrequently used in spoken Korean. It is the same in the case of "They" as well. It is hardly ever used in normal conversations (except for 개들 / 개네들, the informal form of "They" which is more frequently used in informal spoken Korean)

What we do instead is to refer to someone by their names, position or status in society or not just mentioning "He, She, or They" at all in conversations as long as the speakers having a conversation know who they're talking about.

But for the sake of completeness, I include the various forms of "They" below. They're more likely to be used in songs, dramas and books with the exception of 개들 / 개네들 which, as I said earlier, are used quite often in informal spoken Korean among close friends or people of similar age in a close social network.

• Note: Essentially, 개들 and 개네들 are both used as "They" in informal spoken Korean, and are usually interchangeable.

Informal form (그들 / 그녀들, They)

• 그들 / 그녀들 = They
  • 개들 / 개네들 (usually in spoken Korean)
  • 그들 (when referring to a group of guys or a mixed-sex group)
  • 그녀들 (when referring to a group of gals only)

• 그들은 = They + 은 (Topic particle)
  • 개들은 / 개네들은 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그들이 = They + 이 (Identifier particle)
  • 개들이 / 개네들이 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그들도 = They + 도 (Additive particle)
  • 개들도 / 개네들도 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그들을 = They + 를 (Object particle)
  • 개들을 / 개네들을 (usually in spoken Korean)

• 그들의 = Their
  • 개들 / 개네들 (의 is usually omitted in spoken Korean)

• 그들의 것 = Theirs (written Korean)
  • 개들 께 / 개네들 께 (usually in spoken Korean)
Polite form (그분들, They)

• 그분들 = They
• 그분들은 = They + 은 (Topic particle)
• 그분들이 = They + 이 (Identifier particle)
• 그분들도 = They + 도 (Additive particle)
• 그분들을 = They + 를 (Object particle)

• 그분들의 = Their
  - 그분들 (의 is usually omitted in spoken Korean)

• 그분들의 것 = Theirs (written Korean)
  - 그분들 거 (usually in spoken Korean)
This, It and That

In this lesson, we learn about some of the most common and useful words, 'This, It and That.'

• This = 이것
• It = 그것
• That = 저것

Example sentences

[Informal written form]
• 이것은 연필이다. = This is a pencil.
• 그것은 창문이다. = It is a window.
• 저것은 꽃이다. = That is a flower.

[Polite written form]
• 이것은 연필입니다. = This is a pencil.
• 그것은 창문입니다. = It is a window.
• 저것은 꽃입니다. = That is a flower.

Note: For more information on the formality and the written and spoken forms, please read Nouns - Present, Past.

이것, 저것 and 그것 are mainly used in the written form. The equivalent spoken forms are 이건, 그건 and 저건.

Please note that 이건, 그건 and 저건 are actually contracted forms of 이것은, 저것은 and 그것은.

• 이것은 → 이건
• 그것은 → 그건
• 저것은 → 저건

Here are the sentences in the spoken form.

[Informal spoken form]
• 이건 연필이야.
• 그건 창문이야.
• 저건 꽃이야.

[Polite spoken form]
• 이건 연필이에요.
• 그건 창문이에요.
• 저건 꽃이에요.

"Here, there and over there" are used in similar ways to "This, it and that".

• Here = 여기
• There (it) = 거기
• Over there = 저기

Alternatively, (A bit more formal)
• Here = 이곳 (Lit. This place)
• There (it) = 그곳 (Lit. That place (it))
• Over there = 저곳 (Lit. That place over there)

**Example sentences**
• 이곳은 어디에요? = Where is this place? (Where are we?)
• 이곳은 서울이에요. = This place is Seoul (We're in Seoul.)
• 저곳은 뭐에요? = What is that place over there?
• 저곳은 서울시청이에요. = That place (It) is a Seoul City Council.
• 저기는 어디에요? = Where is that over there?
• 저기는 남대문이에요. = That is Namdaemun (shopping center).
• 그리고 여기는 둔촌문화재관이에요. = And this place is Sejong Cultural Center.

여기는 is also usually contracted to 여긴 for the pronunciation's sake.
• 여기는 → 여긴
• 가기로는 → 가긴
• 저기는 → 저긴

Similarly, 이, 그 and 저 are used with 쪽 to make the following words to denote a certain direction.
• 이쪽 = This direction
• 그쪽 = That direction (it)
• 저쪽 = That direction

**Example sentences**
• 이쪽은 거실이에요. = This way is (to) the living room.
• 그쪽은 베란다에요. = That way (It) is (to) the verandah.
• 저쪽은 출구에요. = That way is (to) the exit.
• 샘 [Sam]: 여기 화장실 어디에 있어요? [Where is the toilet here?]
• 민지 [Minji]: 화장실은 저쪽에 있어요. (The toilet is that way.)
• 샘 [Sam]: 서점은 어디에 있어요? [What about a bookstore? (Lit. Where is a bookstore?)]
• 민지 [Minji]: 서점은 이쪽에 있어요. [The bookstore is this way.]

이, 그 and 저 are used with nouns to mean 'this, it and that' respectively.
• 이 나무 = This tree
• 그 집 = That house (It)
• 저 산 = That mountain
• 이 사과 맛있어요 = This apple is delicious
• 저 사과도 맛있어요 = That apple is delicious, too.
• 이 음식점은 비빔밥이 유명해요 = This restaurant is famous for Bibimbap. (Lit. This restaurant, Bimbimbap is famous.)

42
•저 빌딩은 63 빌딩이에요 = That building is the 63 building. (The landmark building in Seoul)

Note:

Bibimbap - is a popular Korean dish. The word literally means "mixed meal." Bibimbap is served as a bowl of warm white rice topped with 나물, namul (sautéed and seasoned vegetables) and 고추장, gochujang (chili pepper paste). A raw or fried egg and sliced meat (usually beef) are common additions. The ingredients are stirred together thoroughly just before eating. It can be served either cold or hot.[1]

Nouns - Present, Past

Nouns [명사]

In this lesson, we're going to learn how to say a word in present and past tenses plus how to use the same expression in polite forms.

Present and Past Tenses

Each table below show how to say 'an apple' and 'a pencil' in four different ways. The table is divided into present and past tenses, and positive and negative forms. Also, the first table shows the written form of Korean and the second table shows the spoken form.

•The **written form** is used in literature such as books, newspapers and any form of writing that is not 'conversational.' The written form, in essence, is literary, factual and declarative. It is rarely used in normal everyday conversations. However, the news on TV uses this written form of Korean. It is also used in public speeches. The reason is probably due to the fact that the news and public announcements or speeches are usually all declarative and/or factual.

•The **spoken form** is the usual way in which people speak and have a conversation. It is used in all types of spoken Korean such as normal conversations, dramas, and movies, with the possible exceptions of news, documentaries and other factual, formal types of programs on TV and radio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>사과다</td>
<td>사과였다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필이다</td>
<td>연필이었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>사과가 아니다</td>
<td>사과가 아니었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필이 아니다</td>
<td>연필이 아니었다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>사과야</td>
<td>사과였어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필이야</td>
<td>연필이었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>사과(가) 아니다</td>
<td>사과(가) 아니었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필(이) 아니다</td>
<td>연필(이) 아니었어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• 사과 = an apple  
• 연필 = a pencil  
• 사과다 = is an apple
• 사과가 아니라 = is not an apple
• 사과였다 = was an apple
• 사과가 아니었다 = was not an apple
• 연필이아 = is a pencil
• 연필(이) 아니야 = is not a pencil
• 연필이었어 = was a pencil
• 연필(이) 아니었어 = was not a pencil

Note: The verb ending, 다, is used for nouns without a final consonant, and 이다 for nouns with a final consonant. Likewise, in the spoken form, 야 is used for nouns without final consonant and 이야 for nouns with a final consonant. Therefore:
• 사과다
• 연필이다
• 사과야
• 연필이야

Note: In spoken Korean, the particles are usually omitted. In the above example, 가/이 are in brackets to show that they are usually left out.

For more information on the 가/이 particle, please read Particles - 는, 가.

Polite Form

Each table below shows the polite form of the respective written and spoken forms we've looked at above which were in the informal form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>사과입니다</td>
<td>사과였습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필입니다</td>
<td>연필이었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>사과가 아닙니다</td>
<td>사과가 아닙니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>연필이 아닙니다</td>
<td>연필이 아닙니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: To change the informal form to the polite form, the following rules apply:

In the case of the present tense,
• 사과다 → 사과입니다 = 다 (or 이다 in the case of nouns with a final consonant, e.g. 연필) is taken off and replaced by 입니다
• 사과가 아니라 → 사과가 아닙니다 = 아니다 is changed to 아닙니다

In the past tense, 다 is changed to 습니다.
• 사과였다 → 사과였습니다
• 사과가 아니었다 → 사과가 아니었습니다
Note: To change the informal form to the polite form, the following rules apply:

In the case of the present tense:
• 사과야 → 사과예요 = 야 changes to 예요 (or 에요 in the case of nouns with a final consonant, e.g. 연필)
• 사과 아니야 → 사과 아니에요 = 야 changes to 에요

In the case of the past tense, 요 is attached at the end.
• 사과였어 → 사과였어요
• 사과 아니었어 → 사과 아니었어요

Here are some example sentences in the written form.
• 가게다 = is a shop
• 가방이다 = is a bag
• 소고기였다 = was beef
• 선생님이셨다 = was a teacher
• 꽃이 아니다 = is not a flower
• 항구가 아니었다 = was not a port
• 동물이 아니었다 = was not an animal

Try translating the following sentences in the spoken form. What do they mean?
• 시계야
• 집이야
• 비둘기였어
• 사람이었어
• 구름이 아니야
• 별명이 아니었어
• 엄청나게가 아니었어

Answers:
• is a clock/watch
• is a house
• was a pigeon
• was a person
• is not a cloud
• was not a building
was not chicken (meat)

Now try rewrite the English sentences above in the polite spoken form of Korean, and pronounce them one by one.

At this point, I'd recommend that you get hold of someone who is Korean to teach you the correct pronunciation of each sentence, but I think many of you would not have that kind of luxury. So alternatively, as imperfect as it may be, I'd recommend the Google Translate's 'Listen' feature. It allows you to listen to the pronunciation of the words you put in.

Google Translate

For those of you who would like to know how to type in Korean, please refer to this post 'How to type in Korean.'
Nouns - Nominalising

것 is attached descriptive forms of verbs an adjectives to nominalise them, i.e. make them nouns.

•하다 → 하는 (Descriptive I)
  •하는 + 것 = 하는 것 = something that you do

•하다 → 한 (Descriptive II)
  •한 + 것 → 한 것 = something that you did

•크다 → 큰 (Descriptive)
  •큰 + 것 = 큰 것 = something that is big / large

Nominalised Verbs (Descriptive I)

•하는 것 = something that you do / that does
•가는 것 = something that goes
•오는 것 = something that comes
•먹는 것 = something that you eat (food)
•마신 것 = something that you drink
•읽는 것 = something that you read
•듣는 것 = something that you listen
•말하는 것 = something that speaks / you talk about
•보는 것 = something that you watch
•쓰는 것 = something that you write / use
•만드는 것 = something that you make

Nominalised Verbs (Descriptive II)

•한 것 = something that you did
•간 것 = something that went
•온 것 = something that came
•먹은 것 = something that you ate
•마신 것 = something that you drank

Nominalised Adjectives (Descriptive)

•많은 것 = something that is many (in quantity)
•작은 것 = something that is small (in quantity)
•큰 것 = something that is big / large
•작은 것 = something that is small
•넓은 것 = something that is spacious
•좁은 것 = something that is cramped
•높은 것 = something that is high
• 낮은 것 = something that is low
• 빠른 것 = something that is fast
• 느린 것 = something that is slow
• 긴 것 = something that is long
• 짧은 것 = something that is short

**Note:** However, in spoken Korean 것 is pronounced 거.

e.g.
• 하는 거 = something that you do
• 긴 거 = something that is long

Also, attach 야 to 거 to make it informal spoken form, or 에요 make it a polite spoken form.

• 하는 거야
• 긴 거야
• 하는 거예요
• 긴 거예요

When a plural form is used, 들 is attached to 것 instead.

• 하는 것들 = things that we do
• 긴 것들 = things that are long

**Example sentences**

• 이 노트북이 가장 빠른 거예요 = This laptop is the one that is the fastest.

• 이 과일주스 병들은 다 마신거예요 = These bottles of fruit juice are all what we drank from already.

• 이 음식들도 오늘 먹는 거예요? = Are these food something that we eat today as well?
  (=Are we going to eat these food today as well?)

• 지금 티비 보는 거예요? = Is TV something you're watching now?
  (= Are you watching TV now?)

• 이 물고기들은 다 어제 바다에서 잡은 것들이예요 = These fish are all what I caught at the sea yesterday.
Nouns - Nominalising Verbs

In this lesson, we're going to learn how to nominalise a verb, which means converting a verb to a noun.

First, take 다 off the plain form of a verb, and then attach 기 to it. (For a list of verbs in the plain from, please refer to Verbs - Present/Past)

The following is a list of some of the verbs which have been converted to nouns.

- 읽다 → 읽기 = reading
- 쓰다 → 쓰기 = writing
- 들다 → 듣기 = listening
- 말하다 → 말하기 = speaking
- 하다 → 하기 = doing
- 가다 → 가기 = going
- 오다 → 오기 = coming
- 보다 → 보기 = watching
- 먹다 → 먹기 = eating
- 마시다 → 마시기 = drinking
- 자다 → 자기 = sleeping
- 걷다 → 걷기 = walking
- 달리다 → 달리기 = running
- 사다 → 사기 = buying
- 팔다 → 팔기 = selling
- 서다 → 서기 = standing
- 앉다 → 앉기 = sitting
- 잠다 → 잠기 = sleeping
- 죽다 → 죽기 = dying

Example Sentences

- 걷기는 하기 쉬운 운동이다 = Walking is an exercise that (we) can do easily
- 나는 쇼핑 하기를 좋아한다 = I like shopping (Lit. I like doing shopping)
- 한나는 아이스크림 먹기를 좋아한다 = Hannah likes eating an icecream
- 비 오는 날 학교 가기는 쉽지 않다 = It's not easy going to school in a rainy day
- 제인은 오래된 CD 플레이어를 팔기를 원했다 = Jane wanted 'selling' an old CD player
비오는 날 = a rainy day (Lit. a rain-coming day) (For more information, refer to Verbs - Descriptive I)
학교 = a school
쉽다 = easy
쉬운 = easy (Adjectives - Descriptive)
운동 = exercise
제인 = Jane
오래되다 = old
CD 플레이어 = a CD player
원하다 = want (Please refer to Verbs - Want to learn how to form 'want to do')

Here are some more example sentences using nominalized verbs.

• 사기와 팔기는 비지니스의 기초다. = Buying and selling are the business's basis.

비지니스 = business
기초 = basis, foundation

• 지영은 공원에서 걷기와 새들의 노래 듣기를 좋아했다. = Ji-young liked walking in the park and listening to birds singing.

지영 = Ji-young (A female name)
공원 = a park
걷다 = walk
새 = a bird
노래 = a song
들다 = listen, hear

• 외국어를 배울 때 읽기, 쓰기, 듣기, 말하기는 모두 매우 중요하다. = When we learn a foreign language, reading, writing, listening and speaking are all very important.

외국어 = a foreign language
배우다 = learn
배울 때 = When we learn (To learn how to use ‘when’, please read Conjunctions - When)
모두 = all
매우 = very
중요하다 = important
Nouns - Numbers and Counting

There are two ways of pronouncing numbers in Korean. These are:

• Sino-Korean numerals - 일, 이, 삼, ...
• Native Korean numerals - 하나, 둘, 셋, ...

The Sino-Korean numerals are used for dates, minutes and prices. The native Korean numerals are used for counting, age and hours.

Sino-Korean Numerals [Dates, Minutes and Prices]

The key to memorizing the pronunciations of the Sino-Korean numerals is to learn from 1(일) to 10(십), and use these ten numbers as building blocks to learn the rest of the numbers. Here is a list of the first ten numbers:

• 1 = 일
• 2 = 이
• 3 = 삼
• 4 = 사
• 5 = 오
• 6 = 육
• 7 = 칠
• 8 = 팔
• 9 = 구
• 10 = 십

From 11 to 19, what you need to do is say 10(십) first and say the ones' number. For example,

• 11 = 10 + 1 → 십 + 일 = 십일
• 12 = 10 + 2 → 십 + 이 = 십이
• 13 = 10 + 3 → 십 + 삼 = 십삼
• 17 = 10 + 7 → 십 + 칠 = 십칠
• 19 = 10 + 9 → 십 + 구 = 십구

From 20 and onward, it works in the same way. But in addition, 20, 30, ..., 90 are pronounced in the following way:

• 20 = 이 + 십 = 이십 (Lit. two-ten)
• 30 = 삼 + 십 = 삼십 (Lit. three-ten)
• 50 = 오 + 십 = 오십
• 80 = 팔 + 십 = 팔십
• 90 = 구 + 십 = 구십
Additionally,

- 21 = 이십 + 일 = 이십일 (Lit. two-ten)
- 22 = 이십 + 이 = 이십이
- 32 = 삼십 + 이 = 삼십이
- 45 = 사십 + 오 = 사십오
- 57 = 오십 + 쁠 = 오십칠
- 89 = 팔십 + 구 = 팔십구

100 is 백, and 200 is 이백 which literally means 'two-hundred.' Then how do you say 300 as a Sino-Korean numeral? Yes, it's 삼백 (Lit. three-hundred)

- 100 = 백
- 101 = 백일
- 105 = 백오
- 127 = 백이십칠
- 200 = 이백
- 219 = 이백십구
- 324 = 삼백이십사
- 508 = 오백팔
- 731 = 칠백삼십일
- 945 = 구백사십오

1000 is 천, then 2000 is? Yes, it's 이천. Then how do you say 3283 in a Sino-Korean way? It's 삼천이백팔십삼 (Lit. three-thousand two-hundred eight-ten three)

- 1000 = 천
- 1001 = 천일
- 1035 = 천삼십오
- 2427 = 이천사백이십칠
- 8492 = 팔천사백구십이

What is 10000? It's 만. It is not 십천 (or ten-thousand). 20000 is 이만, 30000 is 삼만 and so on.

- 10000 = 만
- 10002 = 만이
- 10034 = 만삼십사
- 20673 = 이만육백칠십삼
- 84832 = 팔만사천팔백삼십이

Now 100000 is 십만 and 200000 is 이십만. At this point, it'd help you understand the naming system of these numbers if you think them in terms of their number of zeros. Here is what I mean:
• 1,000,000 is 천만
• 1,000,000,000 is 억 (NOT 만만)
• 10,000,000,000 is 십억
• 100,000,000,000 is 백억
• 1,000,000,000,000 is 천억
• 1,000,000,000,000,000 is 조

You can see that numbers obtain a new name every time they get additional 4 zeros. This is different to English where the name of numbers change after every additional 3 zeros. For example, 'thousand', 'million' and 'billion'.

However, when we write numbers, we follow the international standard in that the comma is placed after every threes. The examples above where the comma is placed after every 4 zeros are for the purpose of easier understanding only. Therefore:

• 만 = 10,000
• 십만 = 100,000 (NOT 10,000)
• 백만 = 1,000,000 (NOT 100,000)

Let's revise what we've learned above:

• 11 = 십일
• 12 = 십이
• 13 = 십삼
• 20 = 이십
• 25 = 이십오
• 30 = 삼십
• 40 = 사십
• 50 = 오십
• 56 = 오십육
• 70 = 칠십
• 80 = 팔십
• 100 = 백
• 101 = 백일
• 107 = 백칠
• 120 = 백이십
• 150 = 백오십
• 200 = 이백
• 202 = 이백이
• 537 = 오백삼십칠 [500 + 30 + 7 → 오백 + 삼십 + 칠 = 오백삼십칠]
• 1000 = 천
• 2000 = 이천
• 2500 = 이천오백
• 10000 = 만
• 10500 = 만오백 [10000 + 500 → 만 + 오백 = 만오백]
The following are the examples of how the Sino-Korean numerals are used for dates, minutes and prices.

**[Date]**

The order in which the date is written is reversed in Korean. A day of the week comes first, then a month and then a year. [a year = 년, a month = 월, a day of the week = 일]

Notice how the Sino-Korean numerals are used in pronouncing dates.

- **28 Jan 2010 → 2010 년 1 월 28 일 = 이천십년 일월 이십팔일**
- **17/10/2011 → 2011/10/17 = 2011 년 10 월 17 일 = 이천십일년 시월 십칠일**

Note: 10 월 is not 십월, but rather 시월. This exception is due to the awkwardness of pronouncing 십월, which is quite cumbersome to pronounce. Therefore 10 월 is 시월 for the pronunciation's sake.

**[Minutes]**

The Sino-Korean numerals are also used for 'minutes' but not for 'hours'. The native Korean numerals which are used for pronouncing the number of 'hours' are explained below in the second section of this post.

[an hour, o'clock = 시, a minute(s) = 분, am = 오전, pm = 오후]

- **9:38 am → 오전 9 시 38 분 = 오전 아홉시 삼십팔분**
- **6:19 pm → 오후 6 시 19 분 = 오후 여섯시 십구분**

**[Prices]**

The Korean currency is called 'won.' Its symbol is '₩', and it's pronounced 원.

- **₩12,800 → 12,800 원 = 만이천팔백원**
- **₩39,130 → 39,130 원 = 삼만구천백삼십원**

**Native Korean numerals [Counting, Age and Hours]**

The basic numbering system of the native Korean numerals is the same as that of the Sino-Korean numerals. However, in addition to one to ten, there is a need to learn the special pronunciations of tens, i.e. 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80 and 90.
From 100, the pronunciation is the same as the Sino-Korean numerals we've looked at above. [hundred (100) = 백, thousand (1000) = 천, ten thousand (10000) = 만]

- 1 = 하나
- 2 = 둘
- 3 = 셋
- 4 = 넷
- 5 = 다섯
- 6 = 여섯
- 7 = 일곱
- 8 = 여덟
- 9 = 아홉
- 10 = 열
- 11 = 열 하나
- 12 = 열 둘
- 13 = 열 셋
- 17 = 열 일곱
- 20 = 스물
- 21 = 스물 하나
- 22 = 스물 둘
- 23 = 스물 셋
- 30 = 서른
- 40 = 마흔
- 50 = 놋
- 55 = 놋 다섯
- 60 = 여순
- 70 = 일흔
- 75 = 일흔 다섯 [70 + 5 = 일흔 + 다섯 = 일흔다섯]
- 80 = 여든
- 90 = 아흔
- 100 = 백
- 189 = 백 여든 아홉 [100 + 80 + 9 = 백 + 여든 + 아홉 = 백여든아홉]

Below are the examples of how the native Korean numerals are used in counting, age and hours.

[Counting]

The native Korean numerals are used for counting, e.g. the number of people in a class, the number of cars in a car park, the numbers of apples on an apple tree, the numbers of pencils or pens on a desk, etc.

- 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 ... = 하나, 둘, 셋, 넷, 다섯, ...

When counting, we use distinctive identifier words called counters. Each kind of object (or person for that matter) has their own counter to distinguish them from other kinds. This counter system is a
bit like the system found in English, i.e. 3 cups of juice, 5 glasses of water. However, the Korean counting system extends to every object.

For example,

• three cups of juice = 주스 세컵
• five glasses of water = 물 다섯잔
• six people = 여섯명 (사람)
• five cars = 차 다섯대
• three apples = 사과 세개
• two pencils = 연필 두자루
• four books = 책 네권
• ten roses = 장미 열송이

Listed below are some of the most common counters used in counting.

• 명 = people
• 마리 = animals
• 대 = cars
• 개 = objects (this is very widely used for any inanimate objects)
• 자루 = long, lean objects
• 그루 = trees
• 송이 = flowers
• 켁레 = shoes
• 장 = paper
• 권 = books
• 살 = age
• 층 = floor [The Sino-Korean numerals are used for counting the number of floors, i.e. the first floor = 일층, the second floor = 이층, and the eighth floor = 팔층]

Please also note that 하나 becomes 한, and the final consonant of each of 둘,셋,넷 and 스물 is omitted when they are attached to counters. For example,

• (물) 한잔 = a glass of water (NOT 하나잔)
• (종이) 두장 = two pieces of paper (NOT 두장)
• (신발) 세켤레 = three pairs of shoes (NOT 세켤레)
• (사람) 네명 = four people (NOT 네명)
• (나이) 스물삼 = twenty (years of age) (NOT 스물삼)

The counters work in a similar way to some of the counter words in English, e.g. 장 is similar to 'pieces' and 켁레 is similar to 'pairs'.

[Age]

As we've looked at above, the counter, 살, is attached to years of age. For example:

• 1 = 한 살
**[Hours]**

The native Korean numerals are also used for 'hours' but not for 'minutes' which use the Sino-Korean numerals.

- 10:25 am → 오전 10 시 25 분 = 오전 열시 이십오분
- 7:30 pm → 오후 7 시 30 분 = 오후 일곱시 삼십분 or 오후 일곱시 반 (반 means 'a half')

**[Months]**

- 한달 = 1 month
- 두달 = 2 months
- 세달 = 3 months
- 네달 = 4 months
- 다섯달 = 5 months
- 여섯달 = 6 months
- 일곱달 = 7 months
- 여덟달 = 8 months
- 아홉달 = 9 months
- 열달 = 10 months

**Example sentence**

- 2 달 동안 학교를 다니고 2 주 동안 방학을 했다 = I went to school for 2 months and had a break(holidays) for 2 weeks.
Adjectives - Present, Past

We're going to look at adjectives in this post. First of all, please have a look at the two tables below, which are similar to the way the 'nouns' were presented in the previous post, Nouns - Present, Past.

As I've mentioned before in Nouns - Present, Past, there are two primary forms in which Korean is used, the written and spoken forms.

• The **written** form is used in literature such as books, newspapers and any form of writing that is not 'conversational.' The written form, in essence, is literary, factual and declarative. It is rarely used in normal everyday conversations. However, the news on TV uses this written form of Korean. It is also used in public speeches. The reason is probably due to the fact that the news and public announcements or speeches are usually all declarative and/or factual.

• The **spoken** form is the usual way in which people speak and have a conversation. It is used in all types of spoken Korean such as normal conversations, dramas, and movies, with the possible exceptions of news, documentaries and other factual, formal types of programs on TV and radio.

Please also note that there are two ways of expressing negatives, for example, **좋다** means 'good' and **많다** means 'many', and they can be expressed in the negative form in the following two ways:

1. **Take 다 off the present tense of an adjective, and attach 지 않다 (or 지 않아 for the spoken form).**

   **The Written Form**
   - 좋지 않다 = not good
   - 많지 않다 = not many

   **The Spoken Form**
   - 좋지 않아 = not good
   - 많지 않아 = not many

2. **Attach 안 to the present tense of an adjective.**

   **The Written Form**
   - 안좋다 = not good
   - 안많다 = not many

   **The Spoken Form**
   - 안좋아 = not good
   - 안많아 = not many
Below are the two tables showing the informal written and spoken forms of the adjective, 빠르다. (Please read Adjectives - Polite for polite forms)

Please note that the words in bold indicate which of the two negatives are more common in each form, i.e. 빠르지 않다 is more commonly used than 안 빠르다 in the written form whereas 안 빨라 is more commonly used than 빠르지 않아 in the spoken form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>빠르다</td>
<td>빨랐다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>빠르지 않다/안 빠르다</td>
<td>빠르지 않다/안 빨랐다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>빨라</td>
<td>빨랬어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>빠르지 않아/안 빨라</td>
<td>빠르지 않았어/안 빨랬어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are the meanings of the different forms of an adjective, 빠르다.

• 빠르다 = fast
• 빠르지 않다/안 빠르다 = not fast
• 빨랐다 = was/were fast
• 빠르지 않았다/안 빨랐다 = was/were not fast
• 빨라 = fast
• 빠르지 않아/안 빨라 = not fast
• 빨랬어 = was/were fast
• 빠르지 않았어/안 빨랬어 = was/were not fast

The List of Common Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Written</td>
<td>Spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>높다</td>
<td>높아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>낮다</td>
<td>낮아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big</td>
<td>크다</td>
<td>커</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (size)</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>작아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacious</td>
<td>넓다</td>
<td>넓어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cramped</td>
<td>좁다</td>
<td>좁아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many</td>
<td>많다</td>
<td>많아</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (quantity)</td>
<td>적다</td>
<td>적어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kind</td>
<td>착하다</td>
<td>착해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>빠르다</td>
<td>빨라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>느리다</td>
<td>느려</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy</td>
<td>쉽다</td>
<td>쉬워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult</td>
<td>어렵다</td>
<td>어려워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interesting</td>
<td>재미있다</td>
<td>재미있어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New</td>
<td>새롭다</td>
<td>새로워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot (tangible)</td>
<td>뜨겁다</td>
<td>뜨거워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold (tangible)</td>
<td>차갑다</td>
<td>차가워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm</td>
<td>따뜻하다</td>
<td>따뜻해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool</td>
<td>시원하다</td>
<td>시원해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wonderful</td>
<td>굉장하다</td>
<td>굉장해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beautiful</td>
<td>아름답다</td>
<td>아름다워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honest</td>
<td>솔직하다</td>
<td>솔직해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lovely</td>
<td>사랑스럽다</td>
<td>사랑스러워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humble</td>
<td>경손하다</td>
<td>경손해</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following are the rules for the conjugation of adjectives:

1) Present (Written) → Past (Written)

1. For adjectives whose last character contain a final consonant, add 았 or 었.
   • 았 for the vowels,ㅏ and ㅗ
   • 었 for the vowels,ㅓ,ㅜ,ㅡ,ㅣ and ㅣ

E.g.
• 작다 → 았었다 = was thin
• 높다 → 올랐다 = was high
• 적다 → 적었다 = was small (quantity)
• 굵다 → 굵었다 = was thick
• 가늘다 → 가늘었다 = was thin
• 재미있다 → 재미있었다 = was interesting/fun
Note: The rules 2 to 6 override the rule 1.

2. For adjectives whose last character is 하, it changes to 했.

E.g.
- 착하다 → 착했다 = was kind
- 따뜻하다 → 따뜻했다 = was warm
- 시원하다 → 시원했다 = was cool
- 신기하다 → 신기했다 = was amazing
- 굉장하다 → 굉장했다 = was wonderful

3. For adjectives whose last character contain ㅂ as a final consonant, take it off and add 웠다.
(Except for 좁다 which changes to 좁았다)

E.g.
- 아름답다 → 아름다웠다 = was beautiful
- 뜨겁다 → 뜨거웠다 = was hot (tangible)
- 차갑다 → 차가웠다 = was cold (tangible)
- 춥다 → 추웠다 = was cold (feeling)

4. For adjectives whose last character contain no final consonant and the vowel, ㅡ, take it off and add ㅓ, ㅆ.

E.g.
- 크다 → 컸다 = was big
- 예쁘다 → 예뻤다 = was pretty

However, when the vowel before the last character is ㅏ, then ㅏ, ㅆ can be used instead.
- 아프다 → 아팠다 = was sick (illness)
- 나쁘다 → 나빴다 = was bad

Also, in the case of 르 as the last character, ㄹ, 랫 is used.
- 빨르다 → 빨랐다 = was fast

5. For adjectives whose last character contain the vowel, ㅣ, take it off and add ㅕ, ㅆ.

E.g.
- 느리다 → 느렸다 = was slow
- 잘생기다 → 잘생겼다 = was handsome/good-looking
- 못생기다 → 못생겼다 = was ugly
6. For adjectives whose last character containsㅏas a vowel andㅎas a final consonant, they change toㅐandㅆ, i.e.앟changes to앳.

E.g.
•빨갛다 → 빨갛다 = was red
•노랗다 → 노랗다 = was yellow
•파랗다 → 파랗다 = was blue

II) Present (Written) → Present (Spoken)

First of all, take 다off adjectives and then:
1. For adjectives whose last character contain a final consonant, add아or어.
   •아for the vowels,ㅏandㅗ
   •어for the vowels,ㅓ,ㅜ,ㅡandㅣ

E.g.
•작다 → 작아 = small (size)
•높다 → 높아 = high
•적다 → 적어 = small (quantity)
•굵다 → 굵어 = thick
•가늘다 → 가늘어 = thin
•재미있다 → 재미있어 = interesting/fun

2. For adjectives whose last character is하, it changes to해.

E.g.
•지루하다 → 지루해 = boring
•시원하다 → 시원해 = cool
•경손하다 → 경손해 = humble
•신기하다 → 신기해 = amazing

3. For adjectives whose last character containㅂas a final consonant, take it off and add워.
   (Except for좁다 which changes to좁았다)

E.g.
•춥다 → 추워 = cold (feeling)
•어렵다 → 어려워 = difficult
•뜨겁다 → 뜨거워 = hot (tangible)
•사랑스럽다 → 사랑스러워 = lovely
4. For adjectives whose last character contain — as a vowel and no final consonant, change — to 턱. (Exceptions, 빠르다 which changes to 빨라, and 배고프다 to 배고파)

E.g.

• 크다 → 커 = big/large
• 예쁘다 → 예뻐 = pretty

However, when the vowel before the last character is 자, then — can be changed to 자 instead.

• 아프다 → 아파/아퍼 = sick (illness)
• 나쁘다 → 나뻐/나뻐 = bad

5. For adjectives whose last character contain 자 as a vowel and no final consonant, change 자 to 자.

E.g.

• 느리다 → 느려 = slow
• 잘생기다 → 잘생겨 = handsome/good-looking
• 못생기다 → 못생겨 = ugly

6. For adjectives whose last character contains 자 as a vowel and 자 as a final consonant, 자 is changed to 자, and 자 is taken off. (i.e. 알고 is changed to 애)

E.g.

• 빨갛다 → 빨개 = red
• 노랗다 → 노래 = yellow
• 파랗다 → 파래 = blue

III) Past (Written) → Past (Spoken)

Simply change 다 to 어.

• 컸다 → 컸어 = was big/large
• 높였다 → 높았어 = was high
• 느렸다 → 느렸어 = was slow
• 빨갛다 → 빨갛어 = was red
• 따뜻했다 → 따뜻했어 = was warm (both tangibility and feeling)
• 뜨거웠다 → 뜨거웠어 = was hot (tangible)
Adjectives - Polite [Present, Past]

Polite Form

In the previous post, Adjectives - Present, Past, we learned to distinguish between the written and spoken forms of Korean. In addition to it, we're going to further distinguish between the polite and informal forms in Korean.

What are the difference between the informal and polite forms?

- **Informal** - Generally speaking, the informal form is used among people of the same age or to people who are younger by older people. It is also used by people who are closely related such as such family members and relatives. People who are close friends would use this form depending on the familiarity and acceptability.

- **Polite** - The polite form is used when speaking to people who are older than you or of a higher rank than you such as in the company, army and other institutions. However, people generally use the polite form in many social settings regardless of one's age. Initially, it would be best to stick to the polite form when learning Korean, as this would be the predominant form of speaking to people in many social environments. However, if you attend school or other similar institutions where you'd make friends and the environment is more casual, it might be more appropriate to use the informal form.

Below are the two tables showing the polite form of the written and spoken forms of Korean. Please note that the words in bold indicate which of the two negatives are more common in each form, i.e. 빠르지 않습니까 is more commonly used than 안 빨립니다 in the written form whereas 안 빨라요 is more commonly used than 빠르지 않아요 in the spoken form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>빠릅니다</td>
<td>빨랐습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>빠르지 않습니다 안 빠릅니다</td>
<td>빠르지 않았습니다 안 빨랐습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>빨라요</td>
<td>빨랬어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>빠르지 않아요 안 빨라요</td>
<td>빠르지 않았어요 안 빨랬어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugations rules

I) Informal written form → Polite written form (Present tense)

First of all, take 다 off adjectives, and then:

1. For adjectives whose final character has no final consonant, addㅂ니다.

E.g.
• 크다 → 큼니다 = big/large
• 세하다 → 셉니다 = strong
• 빨르다 → 빨릅니다 = fast
• 느리다 → 느림니다 = slow
• 착하다 → 착합니다 = kind
• 따뜻하다 → 따뜻합니다 = warm (touch, feeling)
• 시원하다 → 시원합니다 = cool (touch, feeling)

2. For adjectives whose final character has a final consonant, attach습니다.

E.g.
• 작다 → 작습니까 = small (size)
• 많다 → 많습니다 = many
• 적다 → 적습니다 = small (quantity)
• 쉽다 → 쉽습니다 = easy
• 어렵다 → 어렵습니다 = difficult
• 뜨겁다 → 뜨겁습니다 = hot (touch)
• 새롭다 → 새롭습니다 = new

II) Informal written → Polite written (Past tense)

Take 다 off the past tense of adjectives, and then attach습니다.

E.g.
• 컸다 → 컸습니다 = was big/large
• 작았다 → 작았습니다 = was small (size)
• 좋았다 → 좋았습니다 = was good
• 빨랐다 → 빨랐습니다 = was fast
• 느렸다 → 느렸습니다 = was slow
• 쉬웠다 → 쉬웠습니다 = was easy
• 어려웠다 → 어려왔습니다 = was difficult
• 뜨겁웠다 → 뜨겁었습니다 = was hot (touch)
• 차가웠다 → 차가었습니다 = was cold (touch)
• 새로웠다 → 새로웠습니다 = was new
III) Informal → Polite (Spoken)

Attach 요 at the end of the adjectives of all forms.

E.g.
*높아 → 높아요 = high
*안높아 → 안높아요 = not high
*높았어 → 높았어요 = was high
*안높았어 → 안높았어요 = was not high

*많아 → 많아요 = many
*안많아 → 안많아요 = not many
*많았어 → 많았어요 = were many
*안많았어 → 안많았어요 = were not many

*커 → 커요 = big/large
*안커 → 안커요 = not big/large
*쭉어 → 쳤어요 = was big/large
*안쭉어 → 안쭉어요 = was not big/large

For help with the pronunciations of these adjectives in various forms, please use the 'listen' feature on Google Translate.
Adjectives - Descriptive Form

In the previous posts, Adjectives - Present, Past and Adjectives - Polite [Present, Past], we learned that adjectives in Korean function like verbs in that they can be conjugated into present and past tenses, and various other forms.

However, when describing nouns using adjectives placed in front of them, for example, 'a beautiful bird', the adjectives must be conjugated to the descriptive form.

E.g.

• 아름다 → 아름다운 [A plain form → A descriptive form]
• 아름다운 새 = a beautiful bird

The Table of Common Adjectives and Their Descriptive Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain Positive</th>
<th>Descriptive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>높다</td>
<td>높은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>낮다</td>
<td>낮은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big</td>
<td>크다</td>
<td>큰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (size)</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>작은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacious</td>
<td>넓다</td>
<td>넓은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cramped</td>
<td>좁다</td>
<td>좁은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many</td>
<td>많다</td>
<td>많은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (quantity)</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>적은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kind</td>
<td>착하다</td>
<td>착한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>빠르다</td>
<td>빠른</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>느리다</td>
<td>느린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handsome</td>
<td>멋있다</td>
<td>멋있는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ugly</td>
<td>못생가다</td>
<td>못생긴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easy</td>
<td>쉽다</td>
<td>쉬운</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult</td>
<td>어렵다</td>
<td>어려운</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interesting</td>
<td>재미있다</td>
<td>재미있긴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boring</td>
<td>지루하다</td>
<td>지루한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot</td>
<td>뜨겁다</td>
<td>뜨거운</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>차갑다</td>
<td>차가운</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm</td>
<td>따뜻하다</td>
<td>따뜻한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool</td>
<td>시원하다</td>
<td>시원한</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugations rules

First of all, take 다 off adjectives and then:

1. Attach 은 to any adjectives of one character with a final consonant.
(Note: The next rules override this rule.)

E.g.

* 많다 → 많은 = many
* 많은 사람들 → many people
* 작다 → 작은 = small
* 작은 난쟁이 → a small dwarf
* 얇다 → 얇은 = thin
* 얇은 팔 → a thin arm
* 높다 → 높은 = high
* 높은 하늘 → a high sky

2. Attach 는 to any adjectives whose final character is 있 and 없.

E.g.

* 맛있다 → 맛있는 = delicious
* 맛있는 음식 → delicious food
* 맛있다 → 맛있는 = handsome/good-looking
* 맛있는 차 → a good-looking car
* 재미있다 → 재미있는 = interesting/fun
* 재미있는 영화 → a fun movie
* 재미없다 → 재미없는 = not interesting (boring)
* 재미없는 드라마 = a boring drama (soap opera)
Note: The meaning of "있다" is 'to exist', and its opposite is "없다" which means 'to not exist'. Therefore, the adjectives which have a stem of "있다" can also be used with "없다".

E.g.
- 맛있다 → 맛없다 [tasty/delicious → not tasty/delicious]
- 멋있다 → 멋없다 [handsome/good-looking → not handsome/good-looking (ugly)]
- 재미있다 → 재미없다 [interesting/fun → not interesting/fun (boring)]

3. For adjectives whose final character has a final consonant of either 을 or 음, replace them with 녀.

E.g.
- 길다 → 긴 = long
- 긴 연필 → a long pencil
- 빨간다 → 빨간 = red
- 빨간 사과 → a red apple
- 노랗다 → 노란 = yellow
- 노란 우산 = a yellow umbrella

4. For adjectives who final character has a final consonant, 넃, take it off and attach 운 to them.

E.g.
- 쉽다 → 쉬운 = easy
- 쉬운 문제 → an easy problem/question
- 아름답다 → 아름다운 = beautiful
- 아름다운 꽃 → a beautiful flower
- 차가운 = cold (tangible)
- 차가운 바닥 = a cold floor
- 뜨겁다 → 뜨거운 = hot (tangible)
- 뜨거운 커피 = hot coffee

*Exception:
- 좁다 → 좁은 = narrow, small, cramped (space) (NOT 좁은)
  - 좁은 운동장 = a small/cramped playground

5. For adjectives whose last character does not have a final consonant, just attach 녀 to it.

E.g.
• 멋지다 → 멋진 = nice/cool
  • 멋진 모자 → a nice/cool hat
  • 예쁘다 → 예쁜 = pretty
  • 예쁜 구두 → pretty shoes
  • 빠르다 → 빠른 = fast
  • 빠른 자동차 → a fast car
  • 느리다 → 느린 = slow
  • 느린 속력 → a slow speed

Irregular
  • 좋다 → 좋은 = good
  • 좋은 사람 → a good man

Please note, however, that the descriptive form is usually used in writings, as in written Korean.

In spoken Korean, it is more natural to say 'beautiful flowers' as '꽃이 아름다워요' rather than '아름다운 꽃이에요.' (For more on the 'spoken form,' please read Adjectives - Present, Past)

E.g.
  • 꽃들이 아름다워요 = The flowers are beautiful.
  • 자동차가 멋져요 = The car is good-looking.
  • 문제가 쉬워요 = The question is easy.

Also, in spoken Korean, the particles are often omitted except for the 을/를 particle.

  • 꽃들이 아름다워요
  • 자동차 멋져요
  • 문제가 쉬워요

Again, in casual conversations, these sentences would more naturally flow by using '네.'

  • 꽃들이 아름답네요
  • 자동차 멋지네요
  • 문제가 쉬워요

The difference between '문제 쉬워요' and '문제 쉬워요' is that '쉽네요' is less blunt than '쉬워요' which sounds more factual and generalised.

  • 문제 쉬워요 = (I see that) The problem/question is easy.
  • 문제 쉬워요 = The problem/question is easy.
  • 방이 넓네요 = (I see that) The room is spacious/large.
  • 방이 넓네요 = The room is spacious/large. (It can sound quite blunt and just factual.)
This lesson is about the **connective form** of adjectives. This form is used to list several adjectives in a sequence, and to connect one sentence to another.

The conjugation rule for the connective form is easy.

- Take 다 off adjectives and then attach 고 to them.

### Written Form | Present | Connective
--- | --- | ---
High | 높다 | 높고
Low | 낮다 | 낮고
Big | 크다 | 크고
Small (size) | 작다 | 작고
Spacious | 넓다 | 넓고
Crammed | 좁다 | 좁고
Many | 많다 | 많고
Small (quantity) | 적다 | 적고
Kind | 착하다 | 착하고
Fast | 빠르다 | 빠르고
Slow | 느리다 | 느리고
Outgoing | 활달하다 | 활달하고
Quiet | 조용하다 | 조용하고
Easy | 쉽다 | 쉽고
Difficult | 어렵다 | 어렵고
Interesting | 재미있다 | 재미있고
Boring | 지루하다 | 지루하고
Hot (tangible) | 뜨겁다 | 뜨겁고
Cold (tangible) | 차갑다 | 차갑고
Warm | 따뜻하다 | 따뜻하고
Cool | 시원하다 | 시원하고
Wonderful | 광장하다 | 광장하고
Beautiful | 아름답다 | 아름답고
Patient | 인내심 있다 | 인내심 있고
Humorous | 웃기다 | 웃기고
Calm | 참착하다 | 참착하고
The connective form of adjectives is used in two situations:

- To list adjectives in a sequence
- To connect one sentence to another

1. To list adjectives in a sequence

If I was to say 'kind, beautiful and humble' in Korean, the adjectives must be changed to their connective forms except the last adjective of a sentence which determines its tense.

E.g.

- 착하다 → 착하고 = kind
- 아름답다 → 아름답고 = beautiful
- 겸손하다 = humble
- 착하고 아름답고 겸손하다 → kind, beautiful and humble
- 착하고 아름답고 겸손했다 → was kind, beautiful and humble

Alternatively,

- 아름답고 겸손하고 착했다 → was beautiful, humble and kind
- 겸손하고 착하고 아름다웠다 → was humble, kind and beautiful

As you can see, the last adjective determines the tense of a sentence.

2. To connect one sentence to another.

The connective form of adjectives is also used to connect sentences.

- 유리는 착해요 = Yuri is kind
- 미나는 아름다워요 = Mina is beautiful
- 진수는 겸손해요 = Jinsu is humble

유리는 착하고, 미나는 아름답고, 진수는 겸손해요. = Yuri is kind, Mina is beautiful and Jinsu is humble.

- 앤디는 웃겨요 = Andy is humorous/funny
- 프랭클린은 조용해요 = Franklin is quiet
- 제시카는 활달해요 = Jessica is outgoing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Humble</th>
<th>겸손하다</th>
<th>겸손하고</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lovely</td>
<td>사랑스럽다</td>
<td>사랑스럽고</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
앤디는 웃기고, 프랭클린은 조용하고, 제시카는 활달해요
= Andy is humorous/funny, Franklin is quiet, and Jessica is outgoing.

- 음료수는 시원하다 = A soft drink is cool
- 차는 뜨겁다 = Tea is hot
- 포도는 달다 = Grapes are sweet

음료수는 시원하고, 차는 뜨겁고, 포도는 달다.
= A soft drink is cool, tea is hot, and grapes are sweet.
Verbs - Present, Past

동사 [Verbs]

Now, we come to learn, possibly, the most important subject of all Korean grammar, the 'verbs.'

I have drawn up tables below to display various conjugations of verbs. But first of all, we need to pay attention to a distinct feature in Korean verbs, namely, the **plain form**.

The plain form is the most basic form of verbs, from which all the other conjugations of verbs are derived and produced.

However, the plain form is almost never used in both written and spoken Korean. The only instance where the plain form is used is when verbs are listed in the dictionary. Therefore, it is necessary to know the plain form if you'd like to know the meaning of certain verbs and find them in the dictionary.

**Examples of the plain form of verbs**

- 하다 = do
- 먹다 = eat
- 가다 = go
- 달리다 = run

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹는다</td>
<td>먹었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>먹지 않다</td>
<td>먹지 않으나 안 먹는다</td>
<td>먹지 않았다 안 먹었다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹어</td>
<td>먹었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>먹지 않다</td>
<td>먹지 않아 안 먹어</td>
<td>먹지 않았어 안 먹었어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The words in bold indicate which of the two negatives are more commonly used in each case, i.e. 먹지 않으나 is more commonly used than 안 먹는다 in the written form, and 안 먹어 is more commonly used than 먹지 않아 in the spoken form.
### A Table of Commonly Used Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Written</th>
<th>Spoken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Go</strong></td>
<td>가다  간다  갔다  가  갔어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Come</strong></td>
<td>오다  온다  왔다  와  왔어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run</strong></td>
<td>달리다  달린다  달렸다  달려  달렸어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eat</strong></td>
<td>먹다  먹는다  먹었다  먹어  먹었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stand</strong></td>
<td>서다  선다  섰다  서  섰어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sit</strong></td>
<td>앉다  앉는다  앉았다  앉아  앉었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buy</strong></td>
<td>사다  산다  샀다  사  샀어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sell</strong></td>
<td>팔다  판다  팔었다  팔아  팔았어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grow</strong></td>
<td>자라다  자란다  자랐다  자라  자랐어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Throw</strong></td>
<td>던지다  던진다  던졌다  던져  던졌어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Borrow</strong></td>
<td>빌리다  빌린다  빌렸다  빌려  빌렸어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lend</strong></td>
<td>빌려주다  빌려준다  빌려주었다  빌려주어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Play</strong></td>
<td>놀다  논다  놀았다  놀아  놀었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Write</strong></td>
<td>쓰다  쓴다  썼다  써  썼어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Read</strong></td>
<td>읽다  읽는다  읽었다  읽어  읽었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Listen</strong></td>
<td>들다  듣는다  들었다  들어  들었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Live</strong></td>
<td>살다  산다  살았다  살아  살았어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Die</strong></td>
<td>죽다  죽는다  죽었다  죽어  죽었어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conjugations Rules

**1) Plain → Present (Written)**

1. For verbs whose last character has a final consonant, replace 다 with 는다.

E.g.
- 먹다 → 먹는다 = eat
- 사과를 먹는다 = eat an apple
- 걷다 → 걷는다 = walk
- 사람을 걷는다 = A human walks
- 믿다 → 믿는다 = believe
- 나는 예수님을 믿는다 = I believe Jesus
2. For verbs whose last character has no final consonant, replace 다 with ㄴ 다.

E.g.
- 잠자다 → 잠잔다 = sleep
- 지금 새들은 잠잔다 = Now birds sleep (= At the moment, the birds are sleeping)
- 가다 → 간다 = go
- 민아는 학교를 간다 = Mina goes to school
- 보다 → 본다 = watch/look/see
- 현주는 자주 박을 본다 = Hyun-ju often looks outside

3. For verbs whose last character has ㄹ as a final consonant, replace it with ㄴ.

E.g.
- 팔다 → 판다 = sell
- 이 가게는 과일을 판다 = This shop sells fruit
- 살다 → 산다 = live
- 지우는 여기에서 산다 = Ji-u lives here
- 밀다 → 민다 = push
- 자동차를 민다 = push a car

II) Plain → Past (Written)

First of all, take 다 off a verb, and then:

1. For verbs whose last character has no final consonant, attach ㅆ as a final consonant. (exception: For the vowel, ㅜ, attach 었다.)

E.g.
- 가다: 가 + ㅆ 다 = 갔다 = went
- 사다: 사 + ㅆ 다 = 쌓다 = bought
- 서다: 서 + ㅆ 다 = 쌓다 = stood
- 자다: 자 + ㅆ 다 = 쫒다 = slept
- 자라다: 자라 + ㅆ 다 = 자랐다 = grew

Exception:
- 두다: 두 + 었다 = 두었다 = put
- 주다: 주 + 었다 = 주었다 = give
- 하다 → 했다 = did (NOT 했다)

Note: The following rules override the rule 1.
2. For verbs whose last character has a final consonant, add ㄧ or ㄧ.
   - For vowels, ㅏ and ㅗ, add ㄧ.
   - For vowels, ㅓ, ㅜ, ㅡ and ㅣ, add ㄧ.

   E.g.
   • 날다: 날 + ㄧ다 = 날ㄧ다 = flew
   • 살다: 살 + ㄧ다 = 살ㄧ다 = lived
   • 놀다: 놀 + ㄧ다 = 놀ㄧ다 = played (had fun)
   • 먹다: 먹 + ㄧ다 = 먹ㄧ다 = ate
   • 죽다: 죽 + ㄧ다 = 죽ㄧ다 = died
   • 들다: 들 + ㄧ다 = 들ㄧ다 = lifted up
   • 밀다: 밀 + ㄧ다 = 밀ㄧ다 = pushed

3. For verbs whose last character has ㅣ as a vowel, and no final consonant, change ㅣ to ㅕ and attach ㅆ as the final consonant.

   E.g.
   • 달리다: 달리 → 달ㄧ → 달ㄧ다 = ran
   • 빌리다: 빌리 → 빌ㄧ → 빌ㄧ다 = borrowed
   • 이기다: 이기 → 이ㄧ → 이ㄧ다 = won
   • 던지다: 던지 → 던ㄧ → 던ㄧ다 = threw
   • 다니다: 다니 → 다ㄧ → 다ㄧ다 = attended

4. For verbs whose last character has ㅏ as a vowel and no consonant, change ㅏ to ㅏ and attach ㅆ as the final consonant.

   E.g.
   • 오다 → 왔다 = came
   • 보다 → 봤다 = saw/looked/watched

5. For verbs whose last character has ㅡ as a vowel, replace it with ㅓ and then attach ㅆ as the final consonant.

   E.g.
   • 크다: 크 →  sqlSession = grew
   • 쓰다: 쓰 → 썼다 = wrote
   • 트다: 트 → 튼다 = sprouted
Irregular form

E.g.
- 하다 → 했다
- 들다 → 들었다

III) Plain → Present (Spoken)

1. For verbs whose last character has a vowel,ㅏ orㅓ and no final consonant, just drop 다 off.

E.g.
- 가다 → 가 = go
- 서다 → 서 = stand
- 사다 → 사 = buy
- 자라다 → 자라 = grow

Exception: 하 changes to 해.

E.g.
- 하다 → 해 = do
- 원하다 → 원해 = want
- 구하다 → 구해 = save (a life)

2. For verbs whose last character has a vowel,ㅗ orㅜ and no final consonant:
   - ㅗ changes to ㅘ
   - ㅜ changes to ㅝ

E.g.
- 오다 → 와 = come
- 보다 → 봐 = see/watch/look
- 두다 → 두 = place (something) on, leave (something as it is)
- 주다 → 주 = give
- 빌려주다 → 빌려주 = lend

3. For verbs whose last character is 르, drop it off and then attach a final consonant,ㄹ, to the character preceding 르, and then attach 라 or 러 to them.

   - 라 for verbs whose character preceding 르 has a vowel,ㅏ orㅗ.
   - 러 for verbs whose character preceding 르 has a vowel,ㅏ,ㅗ orㅣ.

E.g.
- 가르다 → 갈라 = divide
• 자르다 → 잘라 = cut
• 오르다 → 올라 = climb
• 거르다 → 걸러 = filter, sift
• 서두르다 → 서둘러 = hurry
• 구르다 → 굴러 = roll
• 가로지르다 → 가로질러 = go cross

(Also, for verbs which have a last consonant of ㅡ, replace it with ㅓ.)
• 쓰다 → 써 = write
• 끼다 → 깨 = extinguish (a fire)
• 뜨다 → 떠 = float

4. For verbs whose last character has ㅣ as a vowel and no final consonant, change ㅣ to ㅕ.

E.g.
• 지다 → 쫓 = lose
• 이기다 → 이겨 = win
• 던지다 → 던져 = throw

5. For verbs whose last character has a final consonant, attach:

• 아 for characters whose vowel is ㅏ or ㅗ
• 어 for characters whose vowel is ㅓ, ㅜ, ㅡ or ㅣ.

E.g.
• 살다 → 살아 = live
• 팔다 → 팔아 = sell
• 앉다 → 앉아 = sit
• 놀다 → 놀아 = play (have fun)
• 맛다 → 맛어 = eat
• 물다 → 물어 = bite
• 늙다 → 늙어 = age
• 읽다 → 읽어 = read

Irregular form
• 들다 → 들어 = listen/hear

IV) Past (Written) → Past (Spoken)

Simply change 다 to 어.

• 갔다 → 갔어 = went
• 왔다 → 왔어 = came
• 달렸다 → 달렸어 = ran
• 먹었다 → 먹었어 = ate
• 마셨다 → 마셨어 = drank
Verbs - Polite [Present, Past]

Polite Form

This lesson is about the polite form of verbs, in addition to the informal form which we learned in the previous lesson. Let's go over again the differences between the informal and polite forms.

• **Informal** - Generally speaking, the informal form is used among people of the same age or to people who are younger by older people. It is also used by people who are closely related such as family members and relatives. People who are close friends would use this form depending on the familiarity and acceptability.

• **Polite** - The polite form is used when speaking to people who are older than you or of a higher rank than you such as in the company, army and other institutions. However, people generally use the polite form in many social settings regardless of one's age. Initially, it would be best to stick to the polite form when learning Korean, as this would be the predominant form of speaking to people in many social environments. However, if you attend school or other similar institutions where you'd make friends and the environment is more casual, it might be more appropriate to use the informal form.

Note: The words in bold indicate which of the two negatives are more commonly used in each case, i.e. 먹지 않습니다 is more commonly used than 안 먹습니다 in the written form, and 안 먹어요 is more commonly used than 먹지 않아요 in the spoken form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>먹습니다</td>
<td>먹었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>먹지 않습니다  안 먹습니다</td>
<td>먹지 않았습니다  안 먹었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>먹어요</td>
<td>먹었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>먹지 않아요  안 먹어요</td>
<td>먹지 않았어요  안 먹었어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Conjugation Rules

I) Informal Plain → Polite Present (Written)
First of all, take 다 off the plain form of verbs, and then:

1. For verbs whose final character has no final consonant, addträ. (nosis)

E.g.
- 하다 → 합니다 = do
- 가다 → 갑니다 = go
- 오다 → 온니다 = come
- 쓰다 → 썩니다 = write
- 말하다 → 말합니다 = speak
- 바라다 → 바랍니다 = hope
- 자라다 → 자랍니다 = grow

2. For verbs whose final character has a final consonant, add습니다.

E.g.
- 먹다 → 먹습니다 = eat
- 걷다 → 걷습니다 = walk
- 들다 → 듣습니다 = listen
- 읽다 → 읽습니다 = read
- 입다 → 입습니다 = wear

Note: The rule 3 overrides the rule 2.

3. For verbs whose last character has ㄹ as a final consonant, change it to ㅂ and addträ. (nosis)

E.g.
- 살다 → 삼니다 = live
- 늘다 → 냉니다 = play (have fun)
- 알고 → 알고다 = know
- 날다 → 낞니다 = fly
- 걸다 → 걷습니다 = hang (up)
- 망나 → 망니다 = roll (up)
- 밀다 → 밀 ngừa = push

II) Informal Past → Polite Past (Written)

Take 다 off the informal past form of verbs, and then add습니다.

E.g.
- 했다 → 했습니다 = did
- 갔다 → 갔습니다 = went
- 왔다 → 왔습니다 = came
- 왔다 → 왔습니다 = watched
- 먹었다 → 먹었습니다 = ate
- 떨었다 → 떨었습니다 = ran
- 만났다 → 만났습니다 = met
III) Informal → Polite (Spoken)

Just add 요 to the informal spoken forms.

- 해 → 해요 = do
- 가 → 가요 = go
- 와 → 와요 = come
- 안해 → 안해요 = not do
- 안봐 → 안봐요 = not watch
- 안사 → 안사요 = not buy
- 안자 → 안자요 = not sleep
- 먹었어 → 먹었어요 = ate
- 걸었어 → 걸었어요 = walked
- 만났어 → 만났어요 = met
- 안했어 → 안했어요 = didn't do
- 안갔어 → 안갔어요 = didn't go
- 안먹었어 → 안먹었어요 = didn't eat
- 안빌렸어 → 안빌렸어요 = didn't borrow

A brief revision of the differences between the written and spoken forms

- The written form is used in literature such as books, newspapers and any form of writing that is not 'conversational.' The written form, in essence, is literary, factual and declarative. It is rarely used in normal everyday conversations. However, the news on TV uses this written form of Korean. It is also used in public speeches. The reason is probably due to the fact that the news and public announcements or speeches are usually all declarative and/or factual.

- The spoken form is the usual way in which people speak and have a conversation. It is used in all types of spoken Korean such as normal conversations, dramas, and movies, with the possible exceptions of news, documentaries and other factual, formal types of programs on TV and radio.
Verbs - Future [Will]

We're going to learn how to form a future tense of verbs in this lesson.

Please have a look at the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>will do</th>
<th>won't do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written Form</td>
<td>할 거다</td>
<td>하지 않을 거다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안 할 거다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken Form</td>
<td>할 거야</td>
<td>하지 않을 거야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안 할 거야</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The bold letters indicate which of the two alternatives in the negative form is more commonly used in each of the written and spoken forms, i.e.:

- 하지 않을 거다 is more commonly used than 안 할 거다 in written Korean.
- 안 할 거야 is more commonly used than 하지 않을 거야 in spoken Korean.

Conjugation rules

First of all, take 다 off the plain form of verbs and then:

I) Will

1. For verbs whose final character has no final consonant, attach 를 거다 to them.

E.g.
- 하다 → 할 거다 = will do
- 가다 → 갈 거다 = will go
- 오다 → 올 거다 = will come
- 만나다 → 만날 거다 = will meet
- 자라다 → 자랄 거다 = will grow

2. For verbs whose final character has a final consonant, attach 을 거다 to them.

E.g.
- 먹다 → 먹을 거다 = will eat
- 앉다 → 앉을 거다 = will sit
- 읽다 → 읽을 거다 = will read
- 입다 → 입을 거다 = will wear
- 잡다 → 잡을 거다 = will catch

Note: The rule 3 overrides the rule 2.
3. For verbs whose final character has ㄹ as a final consonant, just attach 거다 to them.

E.g.

•밀다 → 밀거다 = will push
•날다 → 날거다 = will fly
•살다 → 살거다 = will live

Irregular form

•들다 → 들을 거다 = will listen

II) Won't

Simply attach 지 않음을 거다 to verbs.

E.g.

•하다 → 하지 않을 거다 = won't do
•가다 → 가지 않을 거다 = won't go
•오다 → 오지 않을 거다 = won't come
•사다 → 사지 않을 거다 = won't buy
•먹다 → 먹지 않을 거다 = won't eat
•입다 → 입지 않을 거다 = won't wear
•앉다 → 앉지 않을 거다 = won't sit
•밀다 → 밀지 않을 거다 = won't push

Example sentences

•집에 갈 거야? = Will you go home?
•사라는 수영 할 거야 = Sarah will swim
•다윗은 골리앗 이길 거야 = David will beat Goliath
•난 방에서 기타 칠 거야 = I will play the guitar in my room
•존은 박물관에 들어갈 거야 = John will enter the museum

집 = home
존 = John
들어가다 = enter
guitar = 기타
치다 = play (the instrument)
사라 = Sarah
수영 = swim
david = 다윗
골리앗 = Goliath

Question Form

Raise the tone of your voice at the last syllable to turn it into a question form.
• 축구 할 거야? = Will you do(play) soccer?
• 벌써 갈 거야? = Will you go(leave) already?
• 씻을 거야? = Will you wash? (Will you take a shower/?Will you take a bath?)
• 올림픽 볼 거야? = Will you watch the Olympics?
• 학교 안 갈 거야? = Won't you go to school?
• 점심 안 먹을 거야? = Won't you have lunch?
• 이 책 안 읽을 거야? = Won't you read this book?

Polite Form

Let's briefly go over the differences between the informal and polite forms again.

While the informal form in the examples above is used by people who are of the same age and/or close, or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations, the polite form is commonly used by younger people addressing older people, and in any formal situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Will do</th>
<th>Won't do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>할겁니다</td>
<td>하지 않을겁니다 안할겁니다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Spoken Form</th>
<th>Will do</th>
<th>Won't do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>할거예요</td>
<td>하지 않을거예요 안할거예요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The bold letters indicate which of the two alternatives in the negative form is more commonly used in each of the written and spoken forms, i.e.:

- 하지 않을겁니다 is more commonly used than 안할겁니다 in written Korean.
- 안할거예요 is more commonly used than 하지 않을거예요 in spoken Korean.

Conjugations rules

I) Informal → Polite (Written)

Simply change 거다 to 겪습니다.

E.g.
II) Informal → Polite (Spoken)

Simply change 야 to 예요.

E.g.

• 할 거야 → 할 거예요 = will do
• 올 거야 → 올 거예요 = will come
• 들어갈 거야 → 들어갈 거예요 = will enter (go in)
• 안 볼 거야 → 안 볼 거예요 = won't see/watch
• 안 달릴 거야 → 안 달릴 거예요 = won't run

Example sentences

• 집에 갈 거예요? = Will you go home?
• 사라지는 수영 할 거예요. = Sarah will swim.
• 다윗은 골리앗 이길 거예요. = David will beat Goliath.
• 존은 박물관에 들여갈 거예요. = John will enter the museum.
• 저는 거실에서 기타 칠 거예요. = I will play the guitar in the living room.

• 씻을 거예요? = Will you wash? (Will you take a shower/?Will you take a bath?)
• 벌써 갈 거예요? = Will you go(leave) already?
• 축구 할 거예요? = Will you do(play) soccer?
• 월드컵 볼 거예요? = Will you watch the World Cup?

• 학교 안 갈 거예요? = Won't you go to school?
• 점심 안 먹을 거예요? = Won't you have lunch?
• 이 책 안 읽을 거예요? = Won't you read this book?
Verbs - Continuous

Continuous Form [~고 있다]

In this lesson, we'll learn about the 'continuous' form. It would be similar to the '-ing' form in English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하고 있다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않다/안하다</td>
<td>하지 않고 있다/안하고 있다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

•하다 = do
•하지 않다/안하다 = not do
•하고 있다 = is doing
•하지 않고 있다/안하고 있다 = is not doing

Note: The bold letters indicate which of the two alternatives in the negative form is more commonly used in the written form, i.e.:
•하지 않다 is more commonly used than 안하다 in written Korean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>했다</td>
<td>하고 있었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않았다/안 했다</td>
<td>하지 않고 있었다/안하고 있었다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

•했다 = did
•하지 않았다/안 했다 = didn't do
•하고 있었다 = was doing
•하지 않고 있었다/안 하고 있었다 = wasn't doing

Conjugation Rules

Take 다 off the plain form of verbs, and then add 고 있(었)다 for their positive form and 지 않고 있(있)다 for their negative form.

E.g.
•쓰다 → 쓰고 있다 = is writing
• 피터는 편지를 쓰고 있다 = Peter is writing a letter.
• 나뉘주다 → 나뉘 주고 있다 = is serving/distributing
• 보영은 아이들에게 학교급식을 나뉘주고 있다 = Bo-young is serving school meals to children.

• 들다 → 듣고 있었다 = was listening
• 폴은 팀 케러의 메세지를 들고 있었다 = Paul was listening to a Tim Keller's message.

• 자다 → 자지 않고 있었다 = was not sleeping
• 어기는 자지 않고 있었다 = The baby was not sleeping

• 서다 → 서고 있었다 = was standing
• 영근 근위병은 버킹엄 궁전앞에서 계속 서고 있었다 = The English guardsman was standing continuously in front of the Buckingham Palace.

Spoken Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Past Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 있어</td>
<td>하고 있었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않고 있어</td>
<td>하지 않고 있었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안하고 있어</td>
<td>안하고 있었어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• 하고 있어 = is doing
• 하지 않고 있어/안하고 있어 = is not doing
• 하고 있었어 = was doing
• 하지 않고 있었어/안하고 있었어 = was not doing

The conjugation rule is the same as the written form except 다 at the end of sentences changes to 어.

• 점심 먹고 있어 = I am eating lunch
• 줄리아는 안 달리고 있어 = Julia is not running

• 현우는 산을 올라가고 있어 = Hyun-woo is climbing a mountain.
• 민주는 과일 샐러드와 연어 조림을 만들고 있어 = Min-ju is making a fruit salad and fried salmon.

• 아까부터 고슴도치가 안 움직이고 있었어 = Since a while ago, the hedgehog was not moving.
Polite Form

While the informal form in the examples above is used by people who are of the same age and/or close, or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations, the polite form is commonly used by younger people addressing older people, and in any formal situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Past Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 있습니다</td>
<td>하고 있었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않고 있습니다/안 하고 있습니다</td>
<td>하지 않고 있었습니다/안 하고 있었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• 하고 있습니다 = is doing  
• 하지 않고 있습니다/안 하고 있습니다 = is not doing  
• 하고 있었습니다 = was doing  
• 하지 않고 있었습니다/안 하고 있었습니다 = was not doing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Past Continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 있어요</td>
<td>하고 있었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않고 있어요/안 하고 있어요</td>
<td>하지 않고 있었어요/안 하고 있었어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• 하고 있어요 = is doing  
• 하지 않고 있어요/안 하고 있어요 = is not doing  
• 하고 있었어요 = was doing  
• 하지 않고 있었어요/안 하고 있었습니다 = was not doing

Conjugation rules

I) Informal → Polite (Written)

Simply 더 at the end of the informal written 'continuous' forms changes to 습니다

• 하고 있다 → 하고 있습니다 = is doing  
• 가고 있다 → 가고 있습니다 = is going  
• 오고 있다 → 오고 있습니다 = is coming  
• 걷고 있다 → 걸고 있습니다 = is walking  
• 만들고 있다 → 만들고 있습니다 = is making

II) Informal → Polite (Spoken)
Simply add 요 at the end of the sentences of the informal 'continuous' spoken form.

• 지혜는 학교 가고 있어요 = Ji-hye is going to school
• 영수는 수영 하고 있어요 = Young-su is swimming

• 철민이는 영화 보고 있었어요 = Chul-min was watching a movie.
• 정수는 조금 전까지 거실에서 있었어요 = Jung-su was in the living room until a short while ago.

• 10 분전쯤까지 버킹엄 궁전 앞에 아무도 안 서고 있었어요 = Until about 10 minutes ago, there was no one standing in front of the Buckingham Palace.
Verbs - Connective

Connective Form [하고]

This lesson is about the connective form which is primarily used in two ways:

1. To list verbs.
2. To link one sentence to the next.

We'll have a look at these functions of the connective form in detail below.

Table of Common Verbs and Their Connective Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Connective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do</td>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>가고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come</td>
<td>오다</td>
<td>오고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drink</td>
<td>마시다</td>
<td>마시고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk</td>
<td>걷다</td>
<td>걷고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>달리고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand</td>
<td>서다</td>
<td>서고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sit</td>
<td>앉다</td>
<td>앉고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get up</td>
<td>일어나다</td>
<td>일어나고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep</td>
<td>자다</td>
<td>자고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy</td>
<td>사다</td>
<td>사고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sell</td>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>팔고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grow</td>
<td>자라다</td>
<td>자라고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>던지다</td>
<td>던지고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borrow</td>
<td>벌리다</td>
<td>벌리고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lend</td>
<td>벌려주다</td>
<td>벌려주고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>놀고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write</td>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>읽고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen</td>
<td>듣다</td>
<td>듣고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>살다</td>
<td>살고</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugation rule

Take 다 off the plain form of verbs, and then attach 고 to them.
*하다 → 하고
*가다 → 가고

The connective form of verbs is used:
1. To list verbs.
2. To link one sentence to the next.

1. To list verbs.

For example, if I wanted to say "I get up, eat and go.", the verb stems are changed to their connective forms except the last verb which determines the tense of a sentence.

•일어나다 → 일어나고
•먹다 → 먹고
•걷다 → 걷고
•일어나고 먹고 걷다 = get up, eat and go
•일어나고 먹고 걷다 = got up, ate and went
•일어나고 먹고 걷다 = will get up, eat and go

In each instance, the last verb determines the tense of a sentence.

2. To link one sentence to the next.

The example below shows how three sentences can be linked together using the connective form of verbs.

•유리는 학교에 가요. (Yuri goes to school)
•진수는 밖에서 놀어요. (Jinsu plays outside)
•미나는 책 읽어요. (Mina reads a book)

유리는 학교에 가고, 진수는 밖에서 놀고, 미나는 책 읽어요.
= Yuri goes to school, Jinsu plays outside and Mina reads.

However, the verbs in each sentence can be conjugated into different tenses.

•유리는 학교에 갔어요. = Yuri went to school
•진수는 밖에서 놀거든요. = Jinsu will play outside
•미나는 책 읽어요. = Mina reads (or Mina is reading)
유리는 학교에 갔고, 진수는 밖에서 놀고, 미나는 책 읽어요.
= Yuri went to school, Jinsu will play outside and Mina is reading.

Example sentences

E.g.

• I heard and spoke = 듣고 말했다
• I studied, revised and taught = 공부하고, 복습하고, 가르쳤다.
• I washed and ate dinner. = 나는 씻고 저녁을 먹었다.

• 이 상점에서는 과일과 채소를 사고 팔어요. = This shop sells and buys fruit and vegetables.
• 친구를 만나고, 같이 놀고, 점심을 먹었어요. = I met my friend, had fun and ate lunch together.

• 비가 오고 눈이 오고 바람이 불고 번개가 쳐요 = It's raining and snowing, the wind is blowing and the lightning strikes.
• 다니엘은 TV 를 보고, 수잔은 아침을 만들고 있고, 삼손은 아직 자고 있어요. = Daniel is watching TV, Suzanne is making breakfast and Samson is still in bed.
**Verbs - Can**

**Can do [할 수 있다]**

In this lesson, we'll learn about how to conjugate verbs to form *can* and *cannot*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Can do</th>
<th>Could do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>할 수 있다</td>
<td>할 수 있었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>할 수 있어</td>
<td>할 수 있었어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Can't do</th>
<th>Couldn't do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>할 수 없다</td>
<td>할 수 없었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 한다</td>
<td>못 했다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>할 수 없어</td>
<td>할 수 없었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>못 해</td>
<td>못 했어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**: 할 수 없다 and 할 수 없었다 is more commonly used than 못 한다 and 못 했다 in written Korean. Similarly, 못 해 and 못 했어 is more commonly used than 할 수 없어 and 할 수 없었어 in spoken Korean.

**Conjugation rules**

**<Written Form>**

First of all, take 다 off the plain form of verbs.

1. For verbs whose last character has no final consonant, attach 수 있다 to them, and for verbs whose last character has as a final consonant, attach 수 있다 to them.

E.g.

- 했다 → 할 수 있다 = can do
- 가다 → 갈 수 있다 = can go
- 보다 → 볼 수 있다 = can see
- 자다 → 잘 수 있다 = can sleep
- 마시다 → 마실 수 있다 = can drink
- 달리다 → 달릴 수 있다 = can run
- 놀다 → 놀 수 있다 = can play
- 살다 → 살 수 있다 = can live
- 날다 → 날 수 있다 = can fly
2. For verbs whose last character has a final consonant, attach 는 수 있다 to them.

E.g.
- 먹다 → 먹을 수 있다 = can eat
- 입다 → 입을 수 있다 = can wear
- 앉다 → 앉을 수 있다 = can sit
- 잡다 → 잡을 수 있다 = can catch

Irregular forms
- 들다 → 들을 수 있다 (can hear)
- 걷다 → 걸을 수 있다 (can walk)

<Spoken Form>
Add 못 in front of the spoken form of positive verbs to express 'can't do' and 'couldn't do.'

E.g.
- 해 → 못 해 = can't do
- 와 → 못 와 = can't come
- 뭐 → 못 뭐 = can't see
- 가 → 못 가 = can't go
- 들어 → 못 들어 = can't hear
- 먹어 → 못 먹어 = can't eat
- 갓어 → 못 갓어 = couldn't go
- 들었어 → 못 들었어 = couldn't hear
- 먹었어 → 못 먹었어 = couldn't eat

Example Sentences
- 치타는 빨리 달릴 수 있다 = A cheetah can run fast.
- 종달새는 날을 날 수 있다 = A lark can fly in the sky.
- 솔로몬은 어려운 수수께끼를 풀 수 있다 = Solomon can solve a difficult riddle.
- 애완동물은 박물관에 들어갈 수 없다 = A pet cannot enter the museum.
- 기타칠 수 있어 = I can play the guitar.
- 존은 해물은 못 먹어 = John can't eat seafood.
- 사라는 아파서 학교에 못 갔어 = Because Sarah was sick, she couldn't go to school.

치타 = cheetah
빨리 = fast, quickly
종달새 = lark
날다 = fly
솔로몬 = Solomon
어려운 = difficult
수수께끼 = riddle
풀다 = solve
애완동물 = a pet
박물관 = museum
d 들어가다 = enter
기타 = guitar
치다 = play (the instrument)
존 = John
해물 = seafood
사라 = Sarah
아프다 = sick

**Polite Form**

While the informal form in the examples above is used by people who are of the same age and/or close, or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations, the polite form is commonly used by younger people addressing older people, and in any formal situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Can do</th>
<th>Could do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Written</strong></td>
<td>할 수 있습니다</td>
<td>할 수 있었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spoken</strong></td>
<td>할 수 있어요</td>
<td>할 수 있었어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Can't do</th>
<th>Couldn't do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Written</strong></td>
<td>할 수 없습니다</td>
<td>할 수 없었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spoken</strong></td>
<td>할 수 없어요</td>
<td>할 수 없었어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The ones in bold characters are more commonly used alternative of the two in each box.

**Conjugation rules**

1. **Informal → Polite (Written)**

Replace **다** with **습니다.**

- 할 수 있다 → 할 수 있습니다 = can do
- 갈 수 있다 → 갈 수 있습니다 = can go
- 말할 수 있다 → 말할 수 있습니다 = can speak
- 올 수 있었다 → 올 수 있었습니다 = could come
- 일어설 수 있었다 → 일어설 수 있었습니다 = could stand
2. Informal → Polite (Spoken)

Attach 요 at the end of sentences.

•할 수 있어 → 할 수 있어요 = can do
•갈 수 있어 → 갈 수 있어요 = can go
•줄 수 있어 → 줄 수 있어요 = can give
•받을 수 있었어 → 받을 수 있었어요 = could receive
•올라갈 수 있었어 → 올라갈 수 있었어요 = could go up

Example Sentences

•치타는 빨리 달릴 수 있습니다 = A cheetah can run fast.
•종달새는 하늘을 날 수 있습니다 = A lark can fly in the sky.
•솔로몬은 어려운 수수께끼를 풀 수 있습니다 = Solomon can solve a difficult riddle.
•애완동물은 박물관에 들어갈 수 없습니다. = A pet cannot enter the museum.

•기타 칠 수 있어요 = I can play the guitar.
•존은 해물은 못 먹어요 = John can't eat seafood.
•사라는 아파서 학교에 못 갔어요 = Because Sarah was sick, she couldn't go to school.
Verbs – Have

Have (있다) / Don't have (없다)

This lesson covers how the verb, 'have', is used. It can be expressed in two ways:

- **있다** = there is/are (Lit. is present)
- **가지고 있다** = have, possess
- **있지 않다** = there isn't/aren't (Lit. is not present)
- **가지고 있지 않다** = do not have/possess

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>Don't have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>있다</strong></td>
<td><strong>없다</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                        | **가지고 있다** | **가지고 있지 않다** 편한 수
|                        | **안 가지고 있다** | **안 가지고 있다** |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>Don't have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>있다</strong></td>
<td><strong>없다</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                        | **가지고 있다** | **가지고 있지 않다** 편한 수
|                        | **안 가지고 있다** | **안 가지고 있다** |

**Note:** The words in bold letters are the more commonly used of the two alternatives in each of the Written and Spoken forms.

**Have (있다)**

**있다** means 'there is/are', for example:

- **정원에 강아지가 있다** = There is a puppy in the garden.
- **책상 위에 개미가 있다** = There's an ant on the desk.

However, **있다** can also mean 'have'. It is used more frequently than the alternative, '가지고 있다', which is more cumbersome to pronounce.

- **Written form →** **있다**, **가지고 있다**
- **Spoken form →** **있어**, **가지고 있어**
Example Sentences

Written Form
• 책이 있다. = I have a book. *(Lit. There is a book)*
• 시계가 있다. = I have a watch.
• 핸드폰이 있다. = I have a mobile phone.
• 책을 가지고 있다. = I have a book.
• 핸드폰을 가지고 있다. = I have a mobile phone.

Spoken Form
• 책(이) 있어. = I have a book.
• 핸드폰(이) 있어. = I have a mobile phone.
• 시계(가) 있어. = I have a watch.
• 책(을) 가지고 있어. = I have a book.
• 핸드폰(을) 가지고 있어. = I have a mobile phone.

Note: 1. Use 이/가 with "있다" and 을/를 with "가지고 있다".
2. The particles are usually omitted in spoken Korean.

When you say, 'I have a brother or sister', 가지고 있다 cannot be used because it implies ownership. Only 있다 can be used in relation to people.

For example,

Written Form
• 남동생이 있다. = I have a younger brother.
• 여동생이 있다. = I have a younger sister.

Spoken Form
• 형(이) 있어. = I have an older brother.
• 누나(가) 있어. = I have an older sister.
• 남동생(이) 있어. = I have a younger brother.
• 여동생(이) 있어. = I have a younger sister.

Don't have (없다)

없다 literally means 'there isn't/aren't'. However, it can also mean 'don't have'

For example,

Written Form
• 없다 = don't have *(Lit. there isn't/aren't)*
• 가지고 있지 않다/안 가지고 있다 = don't have *(Lit. don't own/possess)*
Spoken Form

• 없어 = don't have (Lit. there isn't/aren't)
• 가지고 있지 않아/안 가지고 있어 = don't have (Lit. don't own/possess)

Note: For the negatives, the **words in bold letters** are the more commonly used of the two alternatives in each of the Written and Spoken forms.

Example Sentences

Written Form

• 책이 없다. = I don't have a book.
• 시계가 없다. = I don't have a watch.
• 핸드폰이 없다. = I don't have a mobile phone.
• 책을 가지고 있지 않다. = I don't have/own a book.
• 핸드폰을 가지고 있지 않다. = I don't have/own a mobile phone.

Spoken Form

• 책이 없어.
• 시계가 없어.
• 핸드폰이 없어.
• 책을 안 가지고 있어.
• 핸드폰을 안 가지고 있어.

Question Form

In spoken Korean, in order to change a sentence into a question, you simply need to raise your tone at the last letter.

To see how it's done, it'd be probably best to watch a native Korean do it for you. However, as I figure most of you would not have that kind of luxury, having a native speaker do it for you whenever you want, I encourage you to listen to the Korean audios or recordings online or watch Korean dramas or movies and familiarize yourself with the intonation of questions. For excellent free audio and video resources, please try 'Talk To Me In Korean' (http://www.talkto.meinkorean.com/).

• 형(이) 있어요? = Do you have an older brother?
• 누나(가) 있어요? = Do you have an older sister?
• 남동생(이) 있어요? = Do you have a younger brother?
• 여동생(이) 있어요? = Do you have a younger sister?

• 책(이) 없어요? = Don't you have a book?
• 시계(가) 없어요? = Don't you have a watch?
• 핸드폰(이) 없어요? = Don't you have a mobile phone?
**Polite Form**

While the informal form in the examples above is used by people who are of the same age and/or close, or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations, the polite form is commonly used by younger people addressing older people, and in any formal situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Written Form</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>Don't have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>있습니다</td>
<td>없습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>가지고 있습니다</td>
<td>가지고 있지 않습니다 안 가지고 있습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite Spoken Form</th>
<th>Have</th>
<th>Don't have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>이어요</td>
<td>없어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>가지고 있어요</td>
<td>가지고 있지 않아요 안 가지고 있어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I) Informal → Polite (Spoken)**

Just add 요 at the end of a sentence.

- 형 있어요? = Do you have an older brother?
- 누나 있어요? = Do you have an older sister?
- 남동생 있어요? = Do you have a younger brother?
- 여동생 있어요? = Do you have a younger sister?

- 책 없어요? = Don't you have a book?
- 시계 없어요? = Don't you have a watch?
- 핸드폰 없어요? = Don't you have a mobile phone?

**II) Informal → Polite (Written)**

Replace 다 with 습니다.

- 책이 있습니다. = I have a book.
- 시계가 있습니다. = I have a watch.
- 핸드폰이 있습니다. = I have a mobile phone.

- 책을 가지고 있지 않다. = I don't have/own a book.
- 핸드폰을 가지고 있지 않다. = I don't have/own a mobile phone.
Verbs – Want

Verbs - Want [~고 싶다]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 싶다</td>
<td>하고 싶었다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않다</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않았다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 싶어</td>
<td>하고 싶었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않아</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않았어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** 하고 싶지 않다 and 하기 싶다 both mean "I don't want to do." However, In written Korean, 하고 싶지 않다 is more commonly used whereas in spoken Korean, 하기 싶어 is more commonly used. 하기 싶어 literally means "I hate to do."

The bold letters indicate which one is more commonly used.

**Rule**

**Take** 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach 고 싶다/고 싶었다/기 싶다/기 싶었다/고 싶어/고 싶었어 etc.

**Examples (Written Form)**

•하다 → 하고 싶다 = I want to do.
•먹다 → 먹고 싶다 = I want to eat.
•날다 → 날고 싶었다 = I wanted to fly.
•놀다 → 놀고 싶지 않았다 = I didn't want to play.
•마시다 → 마시고 싶지 않았다 = I didn't want to drink.
•바나나가 먹고 싶지 않았다 = I didn't want to eat a banana.
•하늘에서 날고 싶지 않았다 = I didn't want to fly in the sky.

**Examples (Spoken Form)**

•하다 → 하고 싶어 = I want to do.
•먹다 → 먹고 싶어 = I want to eat.
• 날다 → 날고 싶었어 = I wanted to fly.
• 놀다 → 놀기 싶어 = I don’t want to play.
• 마시다 → 마시기 싶었어 = I didn’t want to drink.
• 바나나 먹기 싶어 = I don’t want to eat a banana.
• 하늘 날기 싶었어 = I didn’t want to fly in the sky.

Questions (Spoken Form)
• 자고 싶어? = Do you want to sleep?
• 에. 자고 싶어. = Yes, I want to sleep.
• 뭐먹고 싶어? = What do you want to eat?
• 라면 먹고 싶어. = I want to eat noodles.
• 어디 가고 싶어? = Where do you want to go?
• 공원에 가고 싶어. = I want to go to a park.

Formal Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 싶습니다</td>
<td>하고 싶었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않습니다</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않았습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하고 싶어요</td>
<td>하고 싶었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않어요</td>
<td>하고 싶지 않았어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The informal spoken form is used between close friends or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations. The formal form is used commonly between adults, by people in formal situations or when younger people are speaking to older people.

Rules
For the formal written form, the suffix , 다, is replaced by 습니다.
For the formal spoken form, attach 요 at the end of a sentence.

Examples (Written Form)
• 하다 → 하고 싶습니다 = I want to do.
• 먹다 → 먹고 싶습니다 = I want to eat.
• 날다 → 날고 싶었습니다 = I wanted to fly.
• 놀다 → 놀고 싶지 않았습니다 = I didn't want to play.
• 마시다 → 마시고 싶지 않았습니다 = I didn't want to drink.

Examples (Spoken form)
• 하다 → 하고 싶어요 = I want to do.
• 먹다 → 먹고 싶어요 = I want to eat.
• 날다 → 날고 싶어요 = I wanted to fly.
• 놀다 → 놀고 싶어요 = I didn't want to play.
• 마시다 → 마시고 싶어요 = I didn't want to drink.

More examples
• 자고 싶어요? = Do you want to sleep?
  • 네. 자고 싶어요. = Yes, I want to sleep.
• 뭐 먹고 싶어요? = What do you want to eat?
  •라면 먹고 싶어요. = I want to eat noodles.
• 어디 가고 싶어요? = Where do you want to go?
  •공원에 가고 싶어요. = I want to go to a park.

In addition:

When talking about a third person, '고 싶어 한다' is used instead of '고 싶다', and '고 싶어해' instead of '고 싶어'.

Examples

• 가다 → 가고 싶어 한다
• 루크는 극장에 가고 싶어 한다 = Luke wants to go to the theatre.
• 선미는 사과주스 마시고 싶어해 = Sunmi wants to drink an apple juice.
Verbs - Descriptive Form I

The descriptive form I of verbs takes the meaning of "-ing." (ie. Continuous), or is used as a present tense clause involving "which, that, who etc."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Descriptive I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>달리는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>달리지 않다</td>
<td>달리지 않는</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Table of Common Verbs and Their Descriptive Forms I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Descriptive I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>달리는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>가는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand</td>
<td>서다</td>
<td>서는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come</td>
<td>오다</td>
<td>오는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sit</td>
<td>앉다</td>
<td>앉는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy</td>
<td>사다</td>
<td>사는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sell</td>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>파는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grow</td>
<td>자라다</td>
<td>자라는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>던지다</td>
<td>던지는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borrow</td>
<td>벌리다</td>
<td>벌리하는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lend</td>
<td>벌려주다</td>
<td>벌려주는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>노는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write</td>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>읽는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen to</td>
<td>듣다</td>
<td>듣는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>살다</td>
<td>사는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Die</td>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽는</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These descriptive forms I are used in front of nouns to describe them, and form a present tense clause involving "who, which, that" of English. For example, the descriptive form I of 가다 is 가는 and 가는 기차 means a "train which goes". Literally, 가는 means "going" therefore 가는 기차 = a going train.
Rules

First, take 다 off a verb and then,

1. add 는

Eg.

•먹다 → 먹는 = eating
•사과 먹는 난쟁이 → a dwarf who eats an apple (= Lit. an apple-eating dwarf)
•잠자다 → 잠자는 = sleeping
•잠자는 공주 → a princess who sleeps (= Lit. A sleeping princess)
•죽다 → 죽는 = dying
•죽는 병사 → a soldier who is dying (= Lit. a dying soldier)
•믿다 → 믿지 않는 = not believing/unbelieving
•믿지 않는 토마스 → Thomas who does not believe (= Lit. unbelieving Thomas)

2. Take 른 off a verb with a final consonant, 른 and add 는.

Eg.

•팔다 → 파는 = selling
•골동품 파는 가게 → A shop which sells antiques (= Lit. An antique-selling shop)
•살다 → 사는
•사는 곳 → A place where I'm living (= Lit. A living place)

More examples

•사막에서 자라는 선인장 = A cactus which grows in the desert (= Lit. A desert-growing cactus)
•내가 읽는 책은 다 유익하다. = All the books that I read are informative.
Verbs - Descriptive Form II

The descriptive form II of verbs takes the meaning of "~ed." (ie. past tense) or is used as a past tense clause involving "who, which, that etc.".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Descriptive II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>달린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>달리지 않다</td>
<td>달리지 않은</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Table of Common Verbs and Their Descriptive Forms II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Descriptive II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>달리다</td>
<td>달린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand</td>
<td>서다</td>
<td>선</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come</td>
<td>오다</td>
<td>온</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sit</td>
<td>않다</td>
<td>않은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy</td>
<td>사다</td>
<td>산</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sell</td>
<td>팔다</td>
<td>판</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grow</td>
<td>자라다</td>
<td>자란</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throw</td>
<td>던지다</td>
<td>던진</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borrow</td>
<td>벌리다</td>
<td>벌린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lend</td>
<td>벌려주다</td>
<td>벌려준</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>놀다</td>
<td>놀린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write</td>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰린</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read</td>
<td>읽다</td>
<td>읽은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen to</td>
<td>들다</td>
<td>들은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live</td>
<td>살다</td>
<td>산</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Die</td>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽은</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs can be used in front of nouns to describe them, and form a past tense clause involving "who, which, that" of English. For example, the descriptive form II of 달리다 is 달린 and 달린 기차 means a "train which left". Literally, 달린 means "left" therefore 달린 기차 = a left train
Rules

First, take 다 off a verb and then,

1. For verbs with a final consonant, add 은

   Eg.
   •먹다 → 먹은 = ate
   •사과 먹은 난쟁이 → a dwarf who ate an apple
   •죽다 → 죽은 = died/dead
   •죽은 병사 → a dead soldier (= a soldier who died)
   •믿다 → 믿지 않은 = disbelieved
   •믿지 않은 토마스 → Thomas who disbelieved
   •읽다 → 읽은 = read (past tense)
   •읽은 기사 → an article that I read

2. For verbs without a final consonant and verbs with 르 as a final consonant, replace it with 뷰 as a final consonant.

   Eg.
   •빌리다 → 빌린 = borrowed
   •빌린 책 → a book which I borrowed (Lit. a borrowed book)
   •쓰다 → 쓴 = wrote
   •성루까가 쓴 복음 = the gospel which St. Luke wrote
   •멈추다 → 멈춘 = stopped
   •버스가 멈춘 곳 = a place where the bus stopped

Sentences: Negatives

   •기다리다 → 기다리지 않음 = didn't wait
   •주님을 기다리지 않은 하인 → a servant who didn't wait for the Lord
   •먹다 → 먹지 않은 = didn't eat
   •음식을 먹지 않은 개 = a dog who didn't eat food
   •포기하다 → 포기하지 않은 = didn't give up
   •끝까지 포기하지 않은 몽 = Job who didn't give up till the end
Verbs – Speech (in spoken Korean)

Verbs in spoken Korean

The following dialogue between two close friends involve verbs in the informal spoken form.

잘 = well
쇼핑 = shopping
어 = yes
오전 = am
오후 = pm
먼저 갈게 = I'll go first

This dialogue should be easy to comprehend.

대화 시작 = The conversation starts
상우: 지우야, 뭐 해?
지우: 밥 먹어.
상우: 어디 가?
지우: 어. 학교 가.
상우: 언제 가?
지우: 오전 9 시에.
상우: 왜?
지우: 학교에서 공부해.
상우: 재밌어?
지우: 어. 재밌어.
상우: 어떻게 공부해?
지우: 선생님이 가르쳐 주셔.
상우: 아~ 그래?
지우: 어. 너는 뭐 해?
상우: 나는 쇼핑 가.
지우: 언제?
상우: 오후 3 시에.
지우: 밥은 먹었어?
상우: 어. 먹었어. 나 먼저 갈게. 잘 있어~
지우: 잘 가~

Sang-u: Ji-u, what are you doing?
Ji-u: I'm eating.
Sang-u: Where are you going?
Ji-u: I'm going to school.
Sang-u: When are you going?
Ji-u: At 9 o'clock.
Sang-u: Why? [are you going to school?]
Ji-u: I study at school.
Sang-u: Is it fun?
Ji-u: Yes, it's fun.
Sang-u: How do you study?
Ji-u: My teacher teaches me.
Sang-u: Ahh... really?
Ji-u: Yeap. How about you?
Sang-u: I'll go shopping
Ji-u: When?
Sang-u: At 3 o'clock pm.
Ji-u: Did you have a meal?
Sang-u: Yes. I have. I'll go first then. Bye~
Ji-u: Bye~

This is a conversation between Sang-u and Ji-u. This is a type of conversation that is common between close friends, yet it is extremely simple to understand even for beginners of Korean. So pay attention to how these "spoken forms" are used.

- A list of written forms and their respective spoken forms.

**Written Form - Spoken Form**
[For detailed explanation, refer to ([Verbs - Present, Past](#))]  
go = 가다 - 가  
come = 오다 - 와  
do = 하다 - 해  
eat = 먹다 - 먹어  
give = 주다 - 줘  
receive = 받다 - 받아  
play = 놀다 - 놀아  
sleep = 자다 - 자  
run = 달리다 - 달려  
teach = 가르치다 - 가르쳐  
learn = 배우다 - 배워

These spoken forms are informal so you should only use them with very close friends.
Adverbs - 부사

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>크다</td>
<td>크게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>크지 않다</td>
<td>크지 않게 안크게</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 크지 않게 is more commonly used in written Korean while 안크게 is more common in spoken Korean.

Rules

1. Take 다 off an adjective of the present tense and attach 게/지 않게 to it.
2. Attach 안 to a positive form of adverbs to turn it into its negative form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>높다</td>
<td>높게, 높이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>낮다</td>
<td>낮게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big</td>
<td>크다</td>
<td>크게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (size)</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>작게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacious</td>
<td>넓다</td>
<td>넓게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delicious</td>
<td>맛있다</td>
<td>맛있게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many</td>
<td>많다</td>
<td>많게, 많이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small (quantity)</td>
<td>작다</td>
<td>작게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kind</td>
<td>착하다</td>
<td>착하게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast</td>
<td>빨르다</td>
<td>빨르게, 빨리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow</td>
<td>느리다</td>
<td>느리게</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handsome</td>
<td>멋있다</td>
<td>멋있게</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
Adverbs come just before verbs to describe actions.

많다, 빨르다 and 높다 each have two adverbial forms. 많이, 빨리 and 높이 are more commonly used than 많게, 빨르게 and 높게.

Example sentences

• 나는 스테이크를 맛있게 먹었다 = I ate my steak "deliciously" (Lit. I enjoyed my steak)
• 거북이는 느리게 걷는다 = A tortoise walks slowly
• 밥을 많이 먹었다 = I ate a big meal. (Lit. I ate a meal a lot.)
• 집에 빨리 가자! = Let's go home quickly!
• 철수는 결승점까지 빨리 달렸다. = Cheol-su ran fast to the finish line.
• 성우는 케이크를 크게 만들었다 = Seong-u made a large cake. (Lit. Seong-u made his cake big.)
• 높이 나는 새가 멀리 본다 = The higher a bird flies, the farther it sees. (Lit. A bird which flies high sees afar.)
Particles – 깨/에게/한테

The dative particle, 에게/한테, is mainly used for someone/something to whom you are giving something. 깨 is a honorific form, 에게 is a formal form and 한테 is an informal form.

**Eg. 1**
아버지께 선물을 드렸다 = To my father, I gave a present.

아버지 = Father
선물 = present
드리다 = give (honorific form)
드렸다 = gave (honorific form)

**Eg. 2**
아빠에게 선물을 드렸다 = To my dad, I gave a present.

아빠 = Dad
선물 = present
드리다 = give (honorific form)
드렸다 = gave (honorific form)

**Eg. 3**
누나한테 물을 주었다. = To older sister, I gave water

누나 = older sister
물 = water
주다 = give
주었다 = gave

(으)로부터/에게서/한테서 is used when you are receiving something from someone. Again, (으)로부터 is an honorific form, 에게서 is formal and 한테서 is informal.

**Eg. 1**
대통령으로부터 상을 받았다 = From the president, I received a prize.

**Eg. 2**
엄마에게서 편지를 받았다 = From mum, I received a letter

엄마 = mum
편지 = letter
받다 = receive
받았다 = received

**Eg. 2**
형한테서 소식을 들었다 = From older brother, I heard news

형 = older brother
소식 = news
들다 = hear
들었다 = heard
Direction Particle – 으로/로

Particles - 으로/로

으로 is used for words which have a final consonant, and 로 for words with a final consonant. (Exception: 로 is still used for words which have 르 as a final consonant.)

e.g.

• 드러므로 = by truck
  • 핸드폰으로 = by/with a mobile phone

• 컴퓨터로 = by/with a computer
  • 차로 = by car
  • 연필로 = by/with a pencil

I. 으로/로 is used for tools/methods/transport with which you do something.

Eg.1

• 가위로 종이를 잘랐다 = With scissors, I cut a paper.
  • 연필로 그림을 그렸다 = With a pencil, I drew a picture.
  • 활로 사냥을 했다 = With a bow, I did hunting.

가위 = scissors
종이 = paper
자르다 = cut
잘랐다 = cut (past)
연필 = pencil
그림 = picture
그리다 = draw
그렸다 = drew
활 = bow
사냥 = hunting
하다 = do
했다 = did
사냥을 하다 = do hunting

Eg. 2

• 다윗은 좋은 머리로 골리앗을 이겼다 = With his good brain, David beat Goliath.
  • 나는 상상으로 천국을 보았다 = By my imagination, I saw the heaven.
  • 깃대기는 큰 부리로 물고기를 잡았다 = With its large beak, the gull caught a fish.

다윗 = David
좋은 = good
머리 = head (brain)
Eg. 3
• 비행기로 섬에 갔다 = By a plane, I went to an island.
• 차로 학교까지 1 시간걸린다 = By car, it takes an hour to school.
• KTX로 서울에서 부산까지 3 시간 걸린다 = By KTX, it takes 3 hours to go from Seoul to Busan.

비행기 = plane
섬 = island
가다 = go
갔다 = went
차 = car
학교 = school
시간 = hour
 걸린다 = take (time)
KTX = Korea Train Express

II. 으로/로 is used for a destination/place for which you are headed.

• 천국으로 갔다 = I am headed for the heaven
• 천국으로 들어가는 문 = a door for entering the heaven
• 나오미는 모암으로 떠났어요 = Naomi left for Moab
• 집으로 갔다 = Jim went home.

The difference between 으로/로 and 에/게 is that 으로/로 emphasises where one is headed/has gone whereas 에/게 doesn't.

나는 집으로 갔다 = I went home. (I didn't go to any other place.)
Particles - 에서, 까지 [From, to; at/in]

에서, 까지 [From, to]

에서 and 까지 are used after places/times just like "from" and "to" in English.

Example sentences
• 집에서 학교 까지 = From home to school
• 1 시에서 2 시 까지 = From 1pm to 2pm
• 영국에서 왔어 = I came from England
• 산 정상 까지 올라갔다 = I climbed up to the summit of the mountain.
• 저녁 까지 돌아와 = Come back by evening

영국 = England
산 정상 = mountain summit
저녁 = evening

에서 [At/in]

에서 is used after places to mean that something is happening at a particular place.

Example sentences
• 학교에서 미식축구를 했다. = At school, we played American football.
• 일식집에서 초밥을 먹았다 = At a Japanese restaurant, I ate sushi.
• 공원에서 배드민턴을 쳤다 = In a park, we played badminton.
• 방에서 공부를 했다 = In my room, I studied.
• 화장실에서 샤워를 했다 = In the bathroom, I had a shower.

미식축구 = American football
일식집 = Japanese restaurant
초밥 = sushi
공원 = park
배드민턴 = badminton
방 = room
공부 = study (noun)
공부를 했다 = studied
화장실 = bathroom/toilet
샤워 = shower
샤워를 했다 = had a shower (Lit. did a shower)

Note: In spoken Korean, 를/을 is usually omitted.

For example:
공부를 했다 → 공부 했어 (I studied)
샤워를 했다 → 샤워 했어 (I had a shower)
저녁을 먹었다 → 저녁 먹었어 (I had dinner)
Particles - 만 [only]

만 [Only Particle]

만 essentially means "only" and it is used after a noun. Sometimes, 오직 is used before a noun to emphasize the "only-ness."

•나만 떠났다. = Only I left.
•아빠만 TV를 보셨다. = Only Dad watched TV.
•롯만 이스라엘에 왔다. = Only Ruth came to Israel.
•물만 마셨다. = I drank only water.
•스티븐은 구두만 샀다. = Stephen bought only shoes.
•오직 나만 먹었다. = Only I ate.
•오직 폴만 한국어를 공부했다. = Only Paul studied Korean.
•오직 존만 떠났다. = Only John left.

만 can be also used for nominalized verbs. (Nouns - Nominalizing Verbs) In this case, 만 했다 is attached after a nominalized verb.

Eg.

•나는먹기만 했다. = I did only eating.
•폴은 1 주일동안 한국어 공부하기만 했다. = Paul, for a week, did only studying Korean.
•동물원에서 본 코알라는 자기만 했다. = The koala, which I saw at the zoo, did only sleeping.

동물원에서 본 코알라 = The koala, which I saw at the zoo

For a detailed explanation of the descriptive verb, see (Verbs - Descriptive I)
Possessive - 의

Rule

• Add 의 to a noun. (Note: mainly used in a written form)

Eg.
• 나 + 의 → 나의 = my
• 너 + 의 → 너의 = your
• 그 + 의 → 그의 = his
• 그녀 + 의 → 그녀의 = her

However, in most spoken Korean, they are simplified for easier pronunciation.

Eg.
• 나의 → 내
• 너의 → 네 (pronounced 니)
• 그의/그녀의 → 재,개 (not commonly used)
• 누가 (who) → 누구 (whose)

For all possessives, only 내 and 네(너) are commonly used in spoken Korean. In most cases 의 is omitted.

Eg.
• My car = 내 차
• Your shoes = 네 신발 (pronounced 니 신발)
• Michael's car = 마이클의 자동차 (written form) or 마이클 차 (spoken form)

Notice that 의 has been omitted, and 자동차 has been simplified to 차.

• 누구 차야? (Whose car is it?)
• 마이클 (차) (You can either answer by saying 마이클 or 마이클 차)

In spoken Korean, 'he/she' or 'his/her' are rarely (almost never) used. Instead, his/her name is addressed as a subject in a first sentence, and then omitted for sentences following. This is the same for possessive forms. Instead of 'his/her', 'Michael's/Lisa's' are used.

Eg.
• Lisa's friend1: 리사 가방 짐짜 예뻐. (Lisa's handbag is really pretty)
• Lisa's friend2: 짐짜? 나도 그거 사고 싶다. (Really? I, too, want to buy that)

Another thing to note is that 네 is attached to a personal name if a noun being possessed is a group/organisation. (Spoken Form)

• Lisa's friend1: 리사네 짐짜 커 (Lisa's house is really big)
• Lisa's friend2: 리사네 학교도 커. (Lisa's school, too, is big)
**Note:** A school, house, company and country are some of the 'group/organisation' nouns that require 네 attached to a personal name which are being possessive. Any other personal items such as one's bag, car and so on do not need 네 attached to a personal name.
Conjunctions – And

그리고 [and]

그리고 can only be used between sentences.

Yesterday = 어제
Book = 책
Banana = 바나나
read = 읽다
read[past] = 읽었다
sleep = 자다 slept = 잔다

Eg.
•어제 책을 읽었다. 그리고 잔다. [Yesterday, read book. And slept.]
•바나나는 맛있다. 그리고 달다. [Banana is delicious. And sweet.]

The two sentences are linked by 그리고 but they are still separate. To link two or more sentences into one sentence, please refer to Verbs - Connective.

와/과 ['and' for nouns]

와/과 is used for nouns. Use 와 after nouns without a final consonant, and 과 for nouns with a final consonant. 과/와 is only used to join nouns.

Eg.
•바다와 산 = Sea and Mountain
•너와 나 = You and I
•밥과 빵 = rice and bread
•책과 연필과 종이 = book, pencil and paper
Conjunctions - But, Although

그러나 [But]

그러나 can only be used between sentences.

Book = 책
Banana = 바나나
read = 읽다
want to read = 읽고 싶다
wanted to read = 읽고 싶었다 (Verbs - Want)
sleep = 자다 slept = 잔다
like = 좋아하다 (plain)
like = 좋아하다 (present) (Verbs - Present/Past)

Eg.
• 책을 읽고 싶었다. 그러나 잔다. [I wanted to read a book. But I slept.]
• 바나나는 맛있다. 그러나 나는 좋아하지 않는다. [Banana is delicious. But I don't like it]

The two sentences are linked by 그러나 but they are still separate.

~데/~지만 [But, Although]

To link two or more sentences into one sentence, ~데 or ~지만 are used.

• For verbs, add 데 to Verbs - Descriptive I
• For adjectives, add 데 to Adjectives - Descriptive

Eg.
• 쓰는 → 쓰는데 = write but / although I write
• 글씨는 쓰는데, 읽을 수 없다 = I write words but I cannot read / Although I write, I cannot read
• 사는 → 사는데 = live but / although it lives
• 물에서는 사는데, 땅에서는 못 산다 = It lives in the water but it cannot live on the ground / Although it lives in the water, it cannot live on the ground
• 어려운 → 어려운데 = difficult but / although it's difficult
• 외국어는 배우기 어려운데 재미있다 = A foreign language is difficult to learn but it's interesting / Although a foreign language is difficult to learn, it's interesting.

• For verbs and adjectives, add 지만 to a plain form without 다.

Eg.
• 쓰다 → 쓰지만 = write but / although I write
• 글씨는 쓰지만, 읽을 수 없다 = I write words but I cannot read
• 살다 → 살지만 = live but / although it lives
•물에서는 살지만, 땅에서는 못 산다 = It lives in the water but it cannot live on the ground
• 어렵다 → 어렵지만 = difficult but / although it's difficult
• 외국어는 배우기 어렵지만 재미있다 = A foreign language is difficult to learn but it's interesting.
Conjunctions - But [는데/데]

는데/데 is frequently used in casual spoken Korean. �uchs 데 means "but"

For example,
- 그리스어는 할 줄 아는데 이탈리아어는 할 줄 몰라 = I know how to do(speak/write/read) Greek but I don't know how to do(speak/write/read) Italian.
- 밥을 먹는데, 반찬은 안 먹어. = I eat 밥 (cooked rice) but I don't eat side dishes.
- 방은 넓는데, 화장실은 좁아 = The room is spacious but the bathroom is cramped(small).

Rules

1. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach �uchs 데 to it.
   - 하다 → 하는데 = do but
   - 가다 → 가는데 = go but
   - 오다 → 오는데 = come but
   - 먹다 → 먹는데 = eat but
   - 마시다 → 마시는데 = drink but
   - 사다 → 사는데 = buy but
   - 팔다 → 팔는데 = sell but
   - 걷다 → 걷는데 = walk but

   Note: Take a final consonant, 르, off a plain form of verbs and then attach 늒 데.
   - 알다 → 아는데 (know)
   - 팔다 → 팔는데 (sell)

2. Add 데 to Adjectives - Descriptive form of adjectives.
   - 크다 → 크는데 = big / large but
   - 작다 → 작는데 = small but
   - 가깝다 → 가까운데 = close but (in distance)
   - 멀다 → 먼데 = far but (in distance)
   - 많다 → 많은데 = a lot / many but
   - 적다 → 적은데 = few / little but
   - 뜨겁다 → 뜨거운데 = hot but (temperature)
   - 차갑다 → 차가운데 = cold but (temperature)

Example sentences (spoken form)
- 오늘은 학교 가는데, 내일은 학교 안가요. = I go to school today but I don't go to school tomorrow.
- 영화를 보러 갔는데, 보고 싶은 영화가 없어 = I went to see a movie but there was no movie that I wanted to watch.
- 예전에는 키가 작았는데, 지금은 키 컵. = (I/He/She) was small (height) before but (I/He/She) am/is tall now.
•이 음식 보기에 맛있어 보이는데, 먹어보니 까맣지 않아. = This meal looks delicious but it's not delicious (at all) after I've tried it.
Conjunctions - Because, So

Conjunctions - Because and So [서]

서 has many usages and "because and so" is one of them.

Rules

• Add 서 to a spoken form of the present tense of verbs or adjectives. (Adjectives - Present/Past, Verbs – Present/Past)

  * 해 → 해서 = Because (I) do / (I) do and so
  * 가서 → 가서 = Because (you) go / (you) go and so
  * 떠나 → 떠나서 = Because (you) leave / (you) leave and so
  * 좋아 → 좋아서 = Because (I) like / (I) like and so
  * 먹어 → 먹어서 = Because (you) eat / (you) eat and so
  * 잡아 → 잡어서 = Because (I) catch / (I) catch and so
  * 빨라 → 빨라서 = Because (he's) fast / (he's) fast and so
  * 높아 → 높아서 = Because (it's) high / (it's) high and so
  * 작아 → 작아서 = Because (she's) small / (she's) small and so
  * 커 → 커서 = Because (it's) big / (it's) big and so

Example Sentences

• 농구를 해서 키가 크다
  *= Because I play basketball, I'm tall.
  *= I play basketball and so I'm tall.

• 한국에 가서 지금 미국에 없다
  *= Because he's gone to Korea, now he's not in America.
  *= He's gone to Korea and so he's not in America.

• 난무는 커서 좋다
  *= Because a tree is big, I like it.
  *= A tree is big and so I like it.

• 과학이 좋아서 대학에 갔다
  *= Because I like science, I went to college.
  *= I like science and so I went to college.

• 발딩이 높아서 엘리베이터를 사용해야 한다
  *= Because the building is high, we have to use an elevator.
  *= The building is high and so we have to use an elevator.
농구 = basketball
한국 = Korea
미국 = America
나무 = tree
과학 = science
대학 = college/university
빌딩 = building
엘리베이터 = elevator

Conjunctions - So [그래서]

A sentence containing ~서 can be divided into two separate sentences and 그래서 is used to link them.

Example sentences

•농구를 한다. 그래서 키가 크다. = I play basketball. So I'm tall.
•한국에 갔다. 그래서 지금 미국에 없다. = He's gone to Korea. So he's not in America.
•나무는 크다. 그래서 좋아하다. = A tree is big. So I like it.
•과학이 좋아하다. 그래서 대학에 갔다. = I like science. So I went to college.
•빌딩이 높다. 그래서 엘리베이터를 사용해야 한다. = The building is high. So we have to use an elevator.
**Conjunctions - Because [때문에]**

**Conjunctions - Because [때문에; 왜냐하면, 때문이다]**

때문에 is more frequently used in written Korean and ~서 is favoured in spoken Korean because of its brevity.

**Rules**

Take 다 off a plain form and past tenses of verbs and adjectives and then attach 기 때문에. (But NOT a present tense of verbs ie. 한다 → 한가 때문에 is wrong! 하다 → 하기 때문에 is right!)

- 하다 → 하기 때문에 = Because I do
- 가다 → 가기 때문에 = Because I go
- 사다 → 사기 때문에 = Because I buy
- 보다 → 보기 때문에 = Because I see
- 먹기 → 먹기 때문에 = Because I eat
- 좋아하다 → 좋아하기 때문에 = Because I like
- 했다 → 했기 때문에 = Because I did
- 갔다 → 갔기 때문에 = Because I went
- 먹었다 → 먹었기 때문에 = Because I ate
- 크다 → 크기 때문에 = Because it's big
- 작다 → 작기 때문에 = Because it's small
- 덥다 → 덥기 때문에 = Because it's hot
- 춥다 → 춥기 때문에 = Because it's cold
- 많다 → 많기 때문에 = Because there is a lot
- 길다 → 긴기 때문에 = Because it's long
- 맛있다 → 맛있기 때문에 = Because it's delicious
- 높았다 → 높였기 때문에 = Because it was high
- 예뻤다 → 예뻤기 때문에 = Because it was pretty
- 빨랐다 → 빨랐기 때문에 = Because it was fast
- 강했다 → 강했기 때문에 = Because it was strong

**Example sentences**

- **Compare and contrast** 때문에 and ~서.
  
  • 중국음식을 좋아하기 때문에 중국음식을 먹었다. = Because I like Chinese food, I ate Chinese food. *(Written Korean)*
  • 중국음식 좋아하기 때문에 중국음식 먹었어요. = Because I like Chinese food, I ate Chinese food. *(Spoken Korean)*
  • 중국음식 좋아해서 중국음식 먹었어요 = Because I like Chinese food, I ate Chinese food. *(Spoken Korean)*
• 아침 일찍 학교를 가기 때문에 일찍 일어났다. = Because I go to school early in the morning, I got up early.
• 아침 일찍 학교가서 일찍 일어났어요 = Because I go to school early in the morning, I got up early.
• 겨울에는 춥기 때문에 사람들은 따뜻한 옷을 입는다. = Because the winter is cold, people wear warm clothes.
• 겨울엔 추워서 사람들은 따뜻한 옷을 입어요 = Because the winter is cold, people wear warm clothes.
• 인터넷에는 잘못된 정보가 많기 때문에 무엇을 읽는지 조심해야 한다. = Because on the internet, there is a lot of false information, we should be careful about what we read.
• 인터넷엔 잘못된 정보가 많아서 웹 읽는지 조심해야 되어요. = Because on the internet, there is a lot of false information, we should be careful about what we read.

Note: The object particle, 를/을, is omitted and some words are abbreviated in the spoken form. For example,

•에는 → 엔
•무엇을 → 무얼 → 웬

Although it is less commonly used, a sentence containing two clauses can be divided into two sentences using 왜냐하면 and 때문이다. 왜냐하면 is attached to the front of a second clause and 때문이나 replaces 때문에.

• 중국음식을 먹었다. 왜냐하면 중국음식을 좋아하기 때문이다. = I ate Chinese food because I like Chinese food.
• 중국음식 먹었어요. (왜냐하면) 중국음식 좋아해서요. = I ate Chinese food because I like Chinese food.
• 일찍 일어났다. 왜냐하면 아침 일찍 학교를 가기 때문이다. = I got up early because I go to school early in the morning.
• 일찍 일어났어요. (왜냐하면) 아침 일찍 학교 가서요. = I got up early because I go to school early in the morning.

Note:

왜냐하면 is abbreviated to 왜냐면 or it is altogether omitted in spoken Korean.

때문에 is mainly used in literature and the news reporters use it often. However, people still use 때문에 occasionally in conversations instead of ~서, especially when one wants to explain and reason.
Conjunctions - If/Once [~면/으면]

~면/으면 is used after a verb and the clause containing ~면 must always come first and its meaning is "if/once I do such and such."

**Rules**

1. Take 다 off a plain verb and add 면 to it.
   - 하다 → 하면 = If/Once (I) do
   - 가다 → 가면 = If/Once (you) go
   - 던지다 → 던지면 = If/Once (you) throw

2. Take 다 off a verb with a final consonant and add 오면 to it.
   - 좋아다 → 좋으면 = If/Once (I) like
   - 먹다 → 먹으면 = If/Once (you) eat
   - 잡다 → 잡으면 = If/Once (I) catch

**Eg.**
- 학교에 가면 공부 할 수 있다 = If/Once I go to school, I can study.
- 의대에 가면 의사가 될 수 있다 = If/Once you go to med school, you can become a doctor.
- 책을 가져오면 읽어 줄께 = If/Once you bring (me) a book, I will read (it) to you.

학교 = school
할 수 있다 = can do
의대 = med school
의사 = doctor
할 수 있다 = can become
책 = book
가져오다 = bring
읽다 = read
Conjunctions - If/Once [〜거든]

거든 is a conjunction meaning 'if / once.'

거든 and 면 both mean 'if / once' but 면 is used more often in spoken Korean.

거든 is used in the middle of sentence, for example,

- 진수가 오거든, 이 책을 줘 = If/once Jinsu comes here, please give this book (to him)

But if 거든 is used at the end of a sentence, it means 'because.'

- Please read, Because I'm - 〜거든, to learn how 거든 is used in this sense.

Take 다 off verbs / adjectives and add 거든.

- 하다 → 하거든 = If you do
- 가다 → 가거든 = If you go
- 오거든 = If you come
- 많거든 = If (there are) many
- 있거든 = If there is/are
- 없거든 = If there is/are not

Example sentences
- 마트에 사과가 있거든 사와 주세요 = If there are apples in the supermarket, please buy and bring (them).
- 경기가 시작하거든 저한테 알려 주세요 = If/once the game starts, please let me know.
- 집에도착하거든 연락해! = Once you arrive home, please call/contact me!
- 정원에 꽃들이 많이 자라거든 저 불러 주세요. 보고 싶거든요. = Once the flowers in the garden grow a lot, please call me. (Because) I want to see (them).

Please note 거든요 used at the end of sentence mean "because." Please refer to Because I'm - 〜거든요.
Conjunctions – When

Conjunctions - When [~을 때]

• Rules

First, take 다 off a plain form of verbs (Verbs - Present/Past) then:

1. Add ~을 때 to verbs with a final consonant

•먹다 → 먹을 때 = when I eat
•앉다 → 앉을 때 = when I sit
•믿다 → 믿을 때 = when I believe
•죽다 → 죽을 때 = when I die

2. Add ~ㄹ 때 to verbs without a final consonant.

•가다 → 갈 때 = when I go
•오다 → 올 때 = when I come
•자다 → 잘 때 = when I sleep
•사다 → 살 때 = when I buy

3. Add ~때 to verbs with ㄹ as a final consonant

•팔다 → 팔 때 = when I sell
•살다 → 살 때 = when I live
•놀다 → 놀 때 = when I play (muck around)

Eg.

•저녁 먹을 때 비가 왔다. = When we were eating dinner, the rain came.
•의자에 앉을 때 조심하세요. = When you sit on the chair, be careful.
•병사는 죽을 때 한 마디를 남겼다. = When the soldier was dying, he left a message.
•학교 갈 때 차로 간다. = When I go to school, I go by car.
•집에 올 때 친구 집에 들린다. = When I come home, I visit my friend's house.
•우리는 잘 때 꿈을 꾼다. = When we sleep, we dream.
•사람들은 먹을 것을 살 때 슈퍼마켓으로 간다= When people buy food, they go to a supermarket.

• Take 다 off and add ~을 때 to the past tense of verbs

•먹었다 → 먹을 때 = when I ate
•앉았다 → 앉을 때 = when I sat
•믿었다 → 믿을 때 = when I believed
•죽었다 → 죽을 때 = when I died
• 팔았다 → 팔았을 때 = when I sold
• 살았다 → 살았을 때 = when I lived
• 놀았다 → 놀았을 때 = when I played (mucked around)

Eg.
• 시카고에 살았을 때 영어를 배웠다. = When I lived in Chicago, I learned English.
• 밖에서 놀았을 때, 날씨가 좋았다 = When we played outside, the weather was good.

Note:
• 저녁 먹을 때 비가 왔다. = When we were eating dinner, the rain came.
• 저녁 먹었을 때 비가 왔다. = When we were eating dinner, the rain came.

Both 먹을 때 or 먹었을 때 can be used and they mean the same thing. This is because the final verb, 왔다, determines the tense of a sentence. The former is a more casual form than the latter.
Conjunctions – While

Conjunctions - While [~며/-(으)면서]

~며 form is more frequently used in written Korean while ~면서 is more frequently used in spoken Korean.

Rules

1. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs with no final consonant and add 며/면서 to it.
   - 하다 → 하며/하면서 = while doing
   - 가다 → 가며/가면서 = while going
   - 주다 → 주며/주면서 = while giving
   - 사다 → 사며/사면서 = while buying
   - 보다 → 보며/보면서 = while watching
   - 말하다 → 말하며/말하면서 = while speaking
   - 마시다 → 마시며/마시면서 = while drinking
   - 자다 → 자며/자면서 = while sleeping

2. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs with a final consonant and add 으며/으로써 to it.
   - 먹다 → 먹으며/먹으면서 = while eating
   - 받다 → 받으며/받으면서 = while receiving
   - 찾다 → 찾으면/찾으면서 = while looking for
   - 읽다 → 읽으며/읽으면서 = while reading

Exceptions

- 걷다 → 걸으며/걸으면서 = while walking
- 듣다 → 들으며/들으면서 = while listening

Example sentences

Written Korean

- 나는 운동을 하며/하면서 매트릭스를 봤다. = While doing exercise, I watched Matrix.
- 나는 노래를 들으며/들으면서 지리 공부를 했다. = While listening to music, I studied geography.
- 호머는 잠을 졸으며/资产重组 종종으로써 코를 끄덕였다. = While sleeping, Homer snored.
- 민지는 스타벅스에서 잡지를 읽으며/읽으면서 커피를 마셨다. = At Starbucks, while reading a magazine, Minji drank coffee.
- 준호는 차를 타고 회사를 가며/가면서 라디오를 들었다. = While going to work by car, Junho listened to radio.
Spoken Korean

• 운동하면서 매트릭스 봤어. = While doing exercise, I watched Matrix
• 노래 들으면서 지리 공부 했어. = While listening to music, I studied geography.
• (호머는) 자면서 코 골았어. = While sleeping, Homer snored.
• (민지는) 스타벅스에서 잡지 읽으면서 커피 마셨어. = At Starbucks, while reading a magazine, Minji drank coffee.
• (준호는) 차 타고 회사 가면서 라디오 들었어. = While going to work by car, Junho listened to radio.

매트릭스 = Matrix (The movie)
노래 = music, song
지리 = geography
호머 = Homer (a male name as in Simpsons)
민지 = Minji (a female name)
스타벅스 = Starbucks
잡지 = magazine
커피 = coffee
회사 = work, company
라디오 = radio
준호 = Junho (a male name)

Note:
The spoken Korean usually omits a subject because it is usually understood by the speakers as to who they are talking about. For example, if I were talking about myself, I wouldn't need to use 나는 to say something about me because it is assumed that I am talking about me.

Likewise, the third person subjects like 호머는 and 민지는 can also be omitted when a person being talked about is already known by people having a conversation.

The object particle, 를/을, is omitted in spoken Korean.
5W1H

5W1H - When, Where, Who, What, How and Why

Note: Please refer to Verbs - Present/Past for the spoken form of verbs.

When, where, who, what, how and why are very useful words to make a question and they are convenient to use in conversations with friends. Here are some simple sentences. You may hear these this pattern of the speech a lot from Korean dramas, animations, and people.

To show you how they are used, I've made simple sentences using the verb,"go".

• When: 언제 가? = When do you go? (Lit. when go?)
• Where: 어디 가? = Where do you go?
• Who: 누가 가? = Who is going?
• What: 뭐 가? = What is going?
• How: 어떻게 가? = How do you go?
• Why: 왜 가? = Why do you go?

Note: The subject is usually omitted.

Eg.

• Sam: I will go to school.
• Jenny: 언제 가? [Here, it would mean 'When will you go?']
• Sam: Peter told me that we are going to a museum!
• Jenny: 언제 가? [When are we going?]
• 언제 왔? = When do you come?
• 왜 쳐? = Why do you hit me?
• 왜 울래? = Why do you cry?
• 뭐 줄? = What do I give to you? or What do you give to me? [Depends on the context]

Honorific Form

While the spoken form above is used between close friends or when older people are talking to younger people in informal situations. The honorific form is used commonly between adults, by people in formal situations or when younger people are speaking to older people.

• Just add 요 at the end of a sentence.

• When: 언제 가요? = When do you go? (Lit. when go?)
• Where: 어디 가요? = Where do you go?
• Who: 누가 가요? = Who is going?
• What: 뭐 가요? = What is going?
• How: 어떻게 가요? = How do you go?
• Why: 왜 가요? = Why do you go?
언제 와요? = When do you come?
왜 쳐요? = Why do you hit me?
왜 울어요? = Why do you cry?
뭐 줘요? = What do I give to you? or What do you give to me? [Depends on the context]
Advanced Grammar

Comparatives & Superlatives

Comparatives [~보다]

~보다 is used to compare two persons or things. The person/thing that 보다 is referring to is the one that comes after "-er than" in English. The "~보다" phrase can also come before a subject. So the sentences below have the same meaning.

Note: 이/가 particles are more frequently used than 은/는 particles, and in the spoken Korean, almost exclusively 이/가 are used.

• 나는 동생보다 키가 크다 = I am taller than (my) younger sibling.
• 내가 동생보다 키가 크다 = "I" am taller than (my) younger sibling.
• 동생보다 내가 키가 크다 = I am taller than (my) younger sibling.
• 동생보다 내가 키가 커 = I am taller than (my) younger sibling. [spoken form]
• 동생보다 제가 키가 커요 = I am taller than (my) younger sibling. [formal spoken form]

동생보다 = than younger sibling
동생 = younger sibling
키 = height
크다 = big
키가 크다 = tall
키가 작다 = short
나 = I
내 = 나 changes to 내 before 이/가
제 = the honorific form of 내 used in formal expressions
더 is usually added before an adjective. 더 = more

More examples

• 동물보다 사람이 더 똑똑하다 = Man is cleverer than an animal.
• 나일강이 아마존강보다 더 길다 = The Nile River is longer than the Amazon River.
• 철이 구리보다 강하다 = Iron is stronger than copper.
• 피는 물보다 진하다 = Blood is thicker than water.
• 진수가 진호보다 더 빨라요 = Jinsu is faster than Jinho.
• 저보다 형이 더 잘해요 = My older brother does it better than me.
• 빵보다 밥이 더 좋아요 = I like rice more than bread.

Superlatives [제일]

제일 is added before an adjective to make it a superlative.
• 진수가 제일 빠르다 = Jinsu is the fastest
• 치타가 육지 동물중에서 제일 빠르다 = The cheetah is the fastest among the land animals.
• 에베레스트산은 세계에서 제일 높다 = Mt. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
• 피자가 세계에서 제일 맛있는 음식이다 = Pizza is the most delicious food in the world.
• 제일 아름다운 것은 사랑이에요 = The most beautiful thing is love. [formal spoken form] (Nouns - Present, Past)

세계 = world
맛있다 = delicious
맛있는 = delicious [descriptive form] Adjectives - Descriptive
아름다운 = beautiful [descriptive form]
것 = thing
Imperatives - 해, 가지마

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Informal</td>
<td>해, 가, 먹어</td>
<td>가지마, 먹지마</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td>해요, 가요, 먹어요</td>
<td>가지마요, 먹지마요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honorific</td>
<td>하세요, 가세요, 드세요</td>
<td>가지마세요, 먹지마요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The informal form is used among very close friends or when talking to a younger person who is very close to you in informal situations.

The formal form and the honorific form are used in formal situations. However, if I were to choose which one to use, I would choose the honorific form because the formal form is a bit casual-ish. It is safe to use the honorific form if you are unsure which one to use.

**Note:** The honorific form of verbs is present in Korean such as:

먹다 → 드시다 = eat  
자다 → 주무시다 = sleep  
죽다 → 돌아가시다 = die, pass away

먹어’s honorific form is 드세요. It is usually used when talking to people above your age or in formal situations.

**Rules**

**Informal positive (Imperative)** = Present positive (spoken Korean)

- 해! = Do!  
- 저리 가! = Go over there! (Leave me alone!)  
- 이 과자 좀 먹어. = Eat some of these snacks.  
- 물 좀 마셔. = Drink some water.

**Informal negative** = Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach 지마 to it.

- 가지마! = Don't go!  
- 이 영화는 보지마! = Don't watch this movie!  
- 이거는 먹지마. = Don't eat this.  
- 이 책은 읽지마. = Don't read this book.
Formal positive and negative = Attach 오 to informal forms

Honorific positive =

1. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and then attach 세요 to verbs without a final consonant.
2. Attach 오세요 to verbs with a final consonant.
3. For verbs with a final consonant of 을, drop it off and attach 세요 to it.

•가세요! = Please go!
•이리 오세요. = Please come here.
•빨리 떠나세요! = Please leave quickly!
•어서 드세요. = Please eat already.
•물고기 손으로 잡으세요. = Please catch the fish with your hands.
•손 흔드세요! = Please wave your hands! (흔들다 = wave)
•빙글빙글 도세요! = Please turn round and round! (돌다 = turn round, spin)

Honorific negative = Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach 지마세요.

•장난 하지 마세요! = Please don't fool around!
•저 곳에는 가지 마세요. = Please don't go to that place. (Keep away from that place.)
•박물관에 있는 물건들은 만지지 마세요. = Please don't touch things in the museum.
**Have to - 해야 한다**

**Informal form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Have to</th>
<th>Had to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>해야 한다</td>
<td>해야 했다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>해야 된다</td>
<td>해야 했다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>해야 해</td>
<td>해야 했어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>해야 돼</td>
<td>해야 했어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Don't have to</th>
<th>Didn't have to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하지 않아도 된다</td>
<td>하지 않아도 됐다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하지 않아도 돼 가</td>
<td>하지 않아도 됐어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The words in bold are the more commonly used alternative of the two in each box.

**Rules**

1. **Attach** 야 한다/야 된다/야 돼/야 했어야 **etc. to the informal spoken form of verbs.**  
   *Verbs - Present, Past*
   
   - 해 → 해야 한다 = have to do
   - 가 → 가야 한다 = have to go
   - 와 → 와야 한다 = have to come
   - 보 → 보아 한다 = have to see
   - 먹어 → 먹어야 한다 = have to eat
   - 마셔 → 마셔야 한다 = have to drink

2. **Take** 다 off a plain form of verbs and then attach 지 않아도 된다/지 않아도 됐다/지 않아도 돼 **etc. to it.**

   - 하다 → 하지 않아도 된다 = don't have to do
   - 가다 → 가지 않아도 된다 = don't have to go
   - 오다 → 오지 않아도 된다 = don't have to go
   - 보다 → 보지 않아도 된다 = don't have to come
   - 보다 → 보지 않아도 된다 = don't have to see
   - 먹다 → 먹지 않아도 된다 = don't have to eat
   - 마시다 → 마시지 않아도 된다 = don't have to drink

3. **Attach** 안 and 도 되/도 됐어 **to the front and back of the informal spoken form of verbs respectively.**  
   *Verbs - Present, Past*
• 안해도 돼 = don't have to do
• 안가도 돼 = don't have to go
• 안와도 돼 = don't have to come
• 안봐도 돼 = don't have to see
• 안먹어도 돼 = don't have to eat
• 안마셔도 돼 = don't have to drink

Example sentences

Written Form

• 성민은 오늘 서울에 가야 한다. = Seong-min has to go to Seoul today.
• 민주는 내일 학교에 가지 않아도 된다. = Min-ju doesn't have to go to school tomorrow.
• 애쉴리는 병때문에 작년 매일 약을 먹어야했다 = Because of her sickness, Ashley had to take (lit. eat) medicine everyday last year.

Spoken Form

• 이번 주 목요일까지 과학 과제 끝내야 돼 = I have to finish the science assignment by this Thursday.
• 애쉴리는 이제 다 나아서 병원에 안가도 돼 = Because Ashley has been healed now, she doesn't have to go to the hospital.
• 고추가 너무 매우면 안먹어도 돼 = If the chillies are too spicy, you don't have to eat them.

Formal form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Have to</th>
<th>Had to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>해야 합니다</td>
<td>해야 했습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>해야 됩니다</td>
<td>해야 했습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>해야 해요</td>
<td>해야 했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>해야 돼요</td>
<td>해야 했어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Don't have to</th>
<th>Didn't have to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하지 않아도 됩니다</td>
<td>하지 않아도 했습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안해도 됩니다</td>
<td>안해도 했습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하지 않아도 돼요</td>
<td>하지 않아도 했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안해도 돼요</td>
<td>안해도 했어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The rules for the conjugation are the same as above.

Example sentences

Written Form
성민은 오늘 서울에 가야 합니다. = Seong-min has to go to Seoul today.
민주는 내일 학교에 가지 않아도 됩니다. = Min-ju doesn't have to go to school tomorrow.
애쉴리는 병때문에 작년 매일 약을 먹어야 했습니다 = Because of her sickness, Ashley had to take (lit. eat) medicine everyday last year.

Spoken Form

이번 주 목요일까지 과학 과제 끝내야 돼요 = I have to finish the science assignment by this Thursday.
애쉴리는 이제 다 나아서 병원에 안가도 돼요 = Because Ashley has been healed now, she doesn't have to go to the hospital.
고추가 너무 매우면 안먹어도 돼요 = If the chillies are too spicy, you don't have to eat them.

Source: Learn Korean: LP's Korean Language Learning
**Allowed to - 해도 된다**

**Informal Form**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>are allowed to</th>
<th>were allowed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Written</strong></td>
<td>해도 된다</td>
<td>해도 됐다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spoken</strong></td>
<td>해도 돼</td>
<td>해도 됐어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>aren't allowed to</th>
<th>weren't allowed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Written</strong></td>
<td>하면 안된다</td>
<td>하면 안됐다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spoken</strong></td>
<td>하면 안돼</td>
<td>하면 안됐어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

해도 돼 means "allowed to do" and 안해도 돼 means "don't have to do," NOT "not allowed to do." This needs some explanations.

First of all, 돼 means "ok or allowed." 해도 돼 literally means "doing is ok." 안해도 돼 literally means "not doing" therefore 안해도 돼 literally means "not doing is ok" which means "don't have to do."

하면 안돼 means "not allowed to do." 하면 literally means "if I do" and 안돼 means "not ok" therefore 하면 안돼 literally means "if I do it, it's not ok" which can be expressed as "not allowed to do"

Compare this with **Have to - 해야 한다**

However, you don't have to know these explanations to use them. Actually, I've never thought about why these mean what they mean until today. The best way to learn them is to use them frequently until they become memorised.

**Rules**

1. **Attach** 도 된다/도 됐다/도 돼/도 됐어 to the positive informal spoken form of verbs **Verbs - Present, Past**

   • 해 → 해도 된다 = allowed to do
   • 가 → 가도 된다 = allowed to go
   • 봐 → 봐도 된다 = allowed to see
   • 들어 → 들어도 된다 = allowed to hear
   • 먹어 → 먹어도 된다 = allowed to eat
   • 마셔 → 마셔도 된다 = allowed to drink
   • 달려 → 달려도 된다 = allowed to run
   • 앉아 → 앉아도 된다 = allowed to sit
   • 놀아 → 놀아도 된다 = allowed to play/muck around
2a. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs without a final consonant and attach 면 안된다/면 안됐었어 to it. (Includes verbs with ㄹ as a final consonant)

- 하다 → 하면 안된다 = aren't allowed to do
- 가다 → 가면 안된다 = aren't allowed to go
- 춤추다 → 춤추면 안된다 = aren't allowed to dance
- 놀다 → 놀면 안된다 = aren't allowed to play/muck around
- 말다 → 말면 안된다 = aren't allowed to push
- 둔다 → 둔면 안된다 = aren't allowed to spin

2b. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs with a final consonant and attach 면 안된다/면 안됬었어 to it.

- 먹다 → 먹으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to eat
- 앉다 → 앉으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to sit
- 숨다 → 숨으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to hide
- 잡다 → 잡으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to catch
- 집다 → 집으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to pick up
- 접다 → 접으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to fold

Exceptions

- 들다 → 들으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to listen
- 걷다 → 걸으면 안된다 = aren't allowed to walk

Example sentences

Written form

- 부페에서는 먹고 싶은 만큼 먹어도 된다 = At a buffet (restaurant), people are allowed to eat as much as they want.
- 시험을 마친 사람은 집에 가도 된다 = Those who have finished the exam can go home.
- 도서관에서는 크게 얘기하면 안된다. = It is not allowed to speak loudly in the library.
- 신생아들은 맥박한 음식을 먹으면 안된다. = Infants are not allowed to eat solid food.
- 작년까지 학생들은 매점 자판기를 사용해도 됐었다 = Until last year, students were allowed to use a stall vending machine.

Spoken form

- TV 봐도 돼 = You are allowed to watch TV. (You can watch TV.)
- 이 케이크 먹어도 돼 = You are allowed to eat this cake. (You can eat this cake.)
- 술과 담배는 사면 안해 = You are not allowed to buy alcohol and tobacco.
- 어제까지 놀아도 됐어 = Until yesterday, I was allowed to muck around.
- 작년까지 빅토리아공원에는 들어가면 안됐어 = Until last year, people were not allowed to enter the Victoria park.
Formal Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>are allowed to</th>
<th>were allowed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>해도 됩니다</td>
<td>해도 됐습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>해도 돼요</td>
<td>해도 돼었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>aren't allowed to</th>
<th>weren't allowed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하면 안됩니다</td>
<td>하면 안되었습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하면 안돼요</td>
<td>하면 안되었습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The rules are the same as above.

Example sentences

Written form

• 부페에서는 먹고 싶은 만큼 먹어도 됩니다 = At a buffet (restaurant), people are allowed to eat as much as they want.
• 시험을 마친 사람은 집에 가도 됩니다 = Those who have finished the exam can go home.
• 도서관에서는 크게 얘기하면 안됩니다. = It is not allowed to speak loudly in the library.
• 신생아들은 쪼😂한 음식을 먹으면 안됩니다. = Infants are not allowed to eat solid food.
• 작년까지 학생들은 매점 자판기를 사용해도 됐습니다 = Until last year, students were allowed to use a stall vending machine.

Spoken form

• TV 보도 돼요 = You are allowed to watch TV. (You can watch TV.)
• 이 케익 먹어도 돼요 = You are allowed to eat this cake. (You can eat this cake.)
• 술과 담배는 사면 안돼요 = You are not allowed to buy alcohol and tobacco.
• 어제까지 놀아도 됐어요 = Until yesterday, I was allowed to muck around.
• 작년까지 빅토리아공원에는 들어가면 안돼요 = Until last year, people were not allowed to enter the Victoria park.
**I like doing** - **하는게 좋다, 하는걸 좋아한다**

**I like doing** - **하는게 좋다**

하는게 좋다 is a contracted form of **하는 것이 좋다** (것이 → 게)

하는 것이 means "doing" and if you remember, "가/이" is an identifier particle. I'd also like to call it a specificity particle.

For example,

• 정심에 샌드위치 먹는 것이 좋다 = I like eating a sandwich at lunch (among a variety of things to eat at lunch, a sandwich is my choice)

• 시골에서 사는게 좋다 = I like living in the country (Although I could live in the city or urban area, I like living in the country)

좋다 means two things

• 1. I like
• 2. It's good

Usually, its meaning is "I like doing" in spoken Korean. In written Korean, "하는게 좋다" is more likely to mean "it's good to do something." However, the meaning depends on the context.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하는게 좋다</td>
<td>하지 않는게 좋다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>안하는게 좋다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하는게 좋아</td>
<td>안하는게 좋아</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하는게 좋습니다</td>
<td>하지 않는게 좋습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안하는게 좋습니다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하는게 좋아요</td>
<td>하지 않는게 좋아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>안하는게 좋아요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The words in bold are the more commonly used alternatives of the two in each box.

**Rules**

1. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and then attach 는게 좋다
2. If a verb has a final consonant of ㄹ, it is omitted.

- 하다 → 하는게 좋다 = I like doing, it's good to do
- 먹다 → 먹는게 좋다 = I like eating, it's good to eat
- 보다 → 보는게 좋다 = I like watching, it's good to watch
- 들다 → 듣는게 좋다 = I like listening, it's good to listen
- 걷다 → 걷는게 좋다 = I like walking, it's good to walk
- 쓰다 → 쓰는게 좋다 = I like writing, it's good to write
- 읽다 → 읽는게 좋다 = I like reading, it's good to read
- 만들다 → 만드는게 좋다 = I like making, it's good to make
- 사다 → 사는게 좋다 = I like living, it's good to live
- 말다 → 마는게 좋다 = I like wrapping, it's good to wrap

Example sentences

- 운동하는게 좋다 = I like exercising. It's good to exercise.
- 휴일에는 바닷가에 가는게 좋다 = I like going to the beach at weekends. It's good to go to the beach at weekends.
- 금요일밤에는 피자 먹는게 좋다 = On a Friday night, I like eating pizza. On a Friday night, it's good to eat pizza.
- 심심할땐 영화보는게 좋아 = When I'm bored, I like watching movies. When you're bored, it's good to watch movies.

I like doing - 하는걸 좋아한다

하는걸 is a contracted form of 하는것을 and 을 is an object particle.

하는걸 좋아한다 just means "I like doing"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아한다</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아하지 않는다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하는걸 안 좋아한다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아해</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아하지 않아야 한다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하는걸 안 좋아해</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written</td>
<td>하는것을 좋아합니다</td>
<td>하는것을 좋아하지 않습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하는걸 안 좋아합니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spoken</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아해요</td>
<td>하는걸 좋아하지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하는걸 안 좋아해요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: 걸 is a contracted form of 것을.
Rules are the same as above.

•하다 → 하는 걸 좋아한다 = I like doing
•먹다 → 먹는 걸 좋아한다 = I like eating
•보다 → 보는 걸 좋아한다 = I like watching
•듣다 → 듣는 걸 좋아한다 = I like listening
•읽다 → 읽는 걸 좋아한다 = I like reading
•쓰다 → 쓰는 걸 좋아한다 = I like writing
•걷다 → 걷는 걸 좋아한다 = I like walking
•만들다 → 만드는 걸 좋아한다 = I like making
•살다 → 사는 게 좋아한다 = I like living
•말다 → 마는 게 좋아한다 = I like wrapping

Example sentences

•운동하는 것을 좋아하지 않는다 = I don't like exercising.
•휴일에는 바닷가에 가는 걸 좋아한다 = I like going to the beach at weekends.
•금요일 밤에는 피자 먹는 걸 좋아합니다 = On a Friday night, I like eating pizza.
•심심할 때 영화 보는 걸 좋아해요 = When I'm bored, I like watching movies.
I think - 고 생각해 (Opinion)

고 생각해 is usually used when you are expressing your opinion on something like what people should and shouldn't do and what people should and should not be allowed to do etc.

Refer to Have to - 해야 한다, Allowed to - 해도 된다 and I like doing - 하는 걸 좋아하다 to learn following examples.

Rules

Attach 고 생각해 to the present informal written form of verbs.

eg.

•그걸 해야 한다고 생각해 = I think we should do it.
•공원엔 가도 된다고 생각해 = I think it's OK to go to a park.
•우유를 마시는 게 좋다고 생각한다 = I think it's good to drink milk

Note: 그것 = 그것을, 공원엔 = 공원에는

Example sentences

•저녁에 일찍 자고 아침에 일찍 일어나야 된다고 생각해 = I think people should go to bed early at night and get up early in the morning.

•건강해지기 위해 과일과 채소를 많이 먹어야 한다고 생각해 = I think people should eat a lot of fruits and vegetables to become healthy.

•TV 는 많이 봐도 된다고 생각해요 = I think it's allowable to watch a lot of TV.

•시간약속에 늦으면 안 된다고 생각합니다 = I think it's not acceptable to be late for an appointment

•책은 많이 읽는 게 좋다고 생각한다 = I think it's good to read a lot of books.

•청량음료는 많이 마시지 않는 게 좋다고 생각합니다 = I think it's not good to drink a lot of soft drinks.
I think / It seems - 하는 거 같애/같아 (General)

하는 거 같애 means "I think he/she/they is/are doing (something)" or "It seems he/she/they are doing (something)."

Please note that although grammatically 하는 거 같애 is right. In spoken Korean, it's usually pronounced 하는 거 같애.

[Verbs]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하는 것 같다</td>
<td>했던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않는 것 같다</td>
<td>하지 않았던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>하는 거 같애</td>
<td>했던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않는 거 같애</td>
<td>하지 않았던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In written Korean, it is written 하는 것 같다 whereas in spoken Korean, it is spoken as 하는 거 같애. It is mostly likely due to the fact that 것은 a lot more cumbersome to pronounce than 거 when speaking.

Rules

1. Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach는 거 같애/지 않는 거 같애 etc. to it.

2. Dropㄹ off a plain form of verbs that haveㄹ as a final consonant.

3. Take 다 off a past tense form of verbs and attach 던 것 같다/던 거 같애 etc. to it.

*하다 → 하는 거 같애 = I think they do / It seems they do
*먹다 → 먹는 거 같애 = I think they eat / It seems they eat
*일어나다 → 일어나는 거 같애 = I think they get up
*자다 → 자는 거 같애 = I think they sleep
*보다 → 보는 거 같애 = I think they watch
*层出다 → 쌓는 거 같애 = I think they wash
*달리다 → 달리는 거 같애 = I think they run
*놀다 → 노는 거 같애 = I think they muck around
*살다 → 사는 거 같애 = I think they live
*했다 → 했던 거 같애 = I think they did
•먹었다 → 먹었던 거 같애 = I think they ate
•봤다 → 봤던 거 같애 = I think they watched
•살았다 → 살았던 거 같애 = I think they lived
•놀았다 → 놀았던 거 같애 = I think they mucked around

Example Sentences

•저기서 사람들이 축구 하는 거 같애 = I think people are playing soccer over there.
•이 개는 저 개집에서 살았던 거 같애 = I think this dog lived in that kennel. = I think this dog used to live in that kennel.
•저 방에는 아기가 자고 있는 거 같애 = I think a baby is sleeping in that room.
•나는 밥을 빨리 안먹는 거 같애 = I think I don't eat (a meal) fast.

[Adjectives]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>좋은 것 같다</td>
<td>좋았던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>좋지 않은 것 같다</td>
<td>좋지 않았던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN</td>
<td>안좋은 것 같다</td>
<td>안좋았던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>좋은 거 같애</td>
<td>좋았던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>좋지 않은 거 같애</td>
<td>좋지 않았던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN</td>
<td>안좋은 거 같애</td>
<td>안좋았던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules

1. Attach a descriptive form of adjectives to 거 같애.
2. Take 다 off a past tense form of adjectives and attach 었던 거 같애.

•좋은 → 좋은 거 같애 = I think it's good / It seems good
•많은 → 많은 거 같애 = I think there's a lot / There seems a lot
•큰 → 큰 거 같애 = I think it's big / It seems big
•작은 → 작은 거 같애 = I think it's small / It seems small
•예쁜 → 예쁜 거 같애 = I think it's pretty / It seems pretty
•똑똑한 → 똑똑한 거 같애 = I think he's clever / He seems clever
•솔직한 → 솔직한 거 같애 = I think she's honest / She seems honest
•좋았다 → 좋았던 거 같애 = I think it was good / It seemed good

•맛있었다 → 맛있었던 거 같애 = I think it was delicious
•재밌었다 → 재밌었던 거 같애 = I think it was fun
•쉬웠다 → 쉬웠던 거 같애 = I think it was easy
•많았다 → 많았던 거 같애 = I think there was a lot

Example sentences
•태국음식은 맛있는 거 같애 = I think Thai food is delicious
•이 집은 굉장히 큰 거 같애 = I think this house is enormously big.
•이번 수학시험은 정말 쉬웠던 거 같애 = I think the maths test was really easy.
•내 기억에 저들 위에는 꽃들이 많았던 거 같애 = According to my memory, I think there were a lot of flowers on that hill.

[Nouns]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>고양이인 것 같다</td>
<td>고양이였던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>고양이가 아닌 것 같다</td>
<td>고양이가 아니었던 것 같다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>고양이(인 거) 같애</td>
<td>고양이였던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>고양이(가)아닌 거 같애</td>
<td>고양이(가) 아니었던 거 같애</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The object particle, 가/이, is usually omitted in spoken Korean. 인 거 is also usually omitted.

같다's original meaning is "look like." Therefore, 같다 phrases can have alternative translations but essentially they mean the same thing.

•하는 거 같애 = I think they're doing. It looks like they're doing.
•예쁜 거 같애 = I think it's pretty. It looks pretty.
•치킨인 거 같애 = I think it's a chicken. It looks like a chicken (food).

Rules

Attach 인 것 같다/였던 것 같다/인 거 같애/였던 거 같애 to a noun.

•강아지(인 거) 같애 = I think it's a puppy (It looks like a puppy)
•고양이(인 거) 같애 = I think it's a cat
•뻐꾸기(인 거) 같애 = I think it's a cuckoo

155
Example sentences

• 민희: 너 저 동물이 뭔지 알아? = Do you know what that animal is?
• 수영: 저건 사자 같애. = I think that is a lion. (That looks like a lion)
• 민희: 사자 아닌 거 같은데. 호랑이 같애. = I don't think that is a lion. I think it's a tiger.
• 수영: 그런가? 그럼 저 멀리 저건 뭐지? = Is it? Then what is that over there afar?
• 민희: 사람은 아닌 거 같애. 동물인 거 같애. = I don't think it's a human. I think it's an animal.
• 수영: 침팬지다. = It's a chimpanzee.
• 민희: 침팬지 같았어. = I thought that was a chimpanzee. (It looked like a chimpanzee)

Note: 갈다's past tense is 같았어 and so 고양이 같았어 = I thought it was a cat.

Formal Forms

Rules

Written Korean = Change 다 to 습니다.

Spoken Korean = Attach 요 to the end of a sentence.

eg.
• 태국 음식은 맛있는 것 같습니 다 = I think Thai food is delicious
• 이 집은 굉장히 큰 거 같애요 = I think this house is enormously big.
• 이번 수학시험은 정말 쉬웠던 거 같애요 = I think the maths test was really easy.
• 내 기억에 저 들 위에는 꽃들이 많았던 거 같애요 = According to my memory, I think there were a lot of flowers on that hill.

They/he/she think(s) = ~ 갈대

갈대 is a shortened form of 갈다고 해 and it is used to express what they/he/she think(s). 갈대 is usually used in spoken Korean. Attach 요 to 갈대 to make it formal.

• 할머니가 이 개는 저 개집에서 살았던 거 갈대 = Grandma thinks this dog lived in that kennel. = Grandma thinks this dog used to live in that kennel.
• 엄마가 저 방에는 아기가 자고 있는 거 갈대 = Mum thinks a baby is sleeping in that room.
• 친구가 나는 밥을 빨리 먹는 거 갈대요 = My friend thinks I eat (a meal) fast.
Paul thinks Thai food is delicious.

According to my younger (brother/sister)'s memory, He/she thinks there were a lot of flowers on that hill.

They/he/she think(s) it's a puppy (It looks like a puppy)

They/he/she think(s) it's a cat
I used to do – 했어

"I used to do" in English is 했어 in Korean. 했어 is used with verbs and adjectives to mean "used to".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Informal</th>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>했었다</td>
<td>했었어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>하지 않았었다</td>
<td>하지 않았었어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The letters in bold are used more commonly in each corresponding form.

Replace 다 in verbs in their past tense with 했다

• 갔다 → 갔었다 = used to go
• 안갔다 → 안갔었다 = used to not go
• 왔다 → 왔었다 = used to come
• 먹었다 → 먹었었다 = used to eat
• 마셨다 → 마셨었다 = used to drink
• 좋아했다 → 좋아하였다 = used to like
• 싫어했다 → 싫어하였다 = used to hate
• 봤다 → 봤었다 = used to watch
• 들었다 → 들었었다 = used to listen
• 읽었다 → 읽었었다 = used to read
• 썼다 → 썼었다 = used to write / use
• 살았다 → 살았었다 = used to live
• 샀다 → 샀었다 = used to buy

Example sentences

• (예전에) 서울 중학교를 다녔어 = I used to attend/go to Seoul Middle School (before/in the past).
• 예전에는 버섯을 좋아했어 = I used to like mushrooms in the past. *(but not now)
• 2 년전에 영국에서 살았어 = I used to live in England 2 years ago.
• 초등학생 때는 소설책을 많이 읽았어 = I used to read a lot of novels when I was a primary school student.
• 예전에는 버스를 많이 탔어는데, 지금은 지하철을 더 많이 이용해 = I used to ride a bus a lot but now I use the subway more.

The same apples to adjectives

• 좋았다 → 좋았었다 = (it) used to be good
• 안 좋았다 → 안 좋았었다 = used to be not good
• 컸다 → 컸었다 = used to be big / large *
작았다 → 작았었다 = used to be small
높았다 → 높았었다 = used to be tall **
많았다 → 많았었다 = (there) used to be a lot / many
적었다 → 적었었다 = used to be few/little (in quantity)

크다/ 컷다/ 컷었다 can also mean "tall" when used to refer to height of a person or animals.
E.g. 키가 컷다 = used to be tall (키 = height)

높다/ 높았다/ 높았었다 is used for objects only such as buildings, mountains or sky.
E.g. 엠파이어 스테이트 빌딩은 다른 빌딩들이 세워지기 전까지 뉴욕에서 가장 높았었다 = The Empire State Building used to be the tallest building in New York City before other buildings were built.

Example Sentences
오전에는 주차장에 차들이 많았었는데, 지금은 되게 적네 = There used to be a lot of cars in the car park but now there are only a few. (되게 적네 = very few / little)
이 사과나무는 5 년전만 해도 내 키보다 작았었는데, 지금은 우리 집보다 더 커 = This apple tree used to smaller than my height but now it's bigger (taller) than our house.

Polite Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Polite</th>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>했었습니다</td>
<td>했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>안 했었습니다</td>
<td>안 했어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

어렸을 때는 버섯을 싫어했었는데, 지금은 잘 먹어요 = I used to hate mushrooms when I was young but now I eat them well.
겨울에는 나무에 잎이 하나도 없었는데, 지금은 많아요 = There used to be no leaves on trees, but now there are many / a lot of / a plenty of leaves.
작년에는 시골로 여행을 자주 갔었어요 = I used to travel to countrysides often last year.
부산에 가면 떡을 자주 사먹었어요 = When I go to Busan, I used to buy and eat rice cakes quite often.*
예전에는 연필로 많이 썼었는데, 지금은 펜을 더 많이 사용해요 = I used to write with a pencil a lot but now I use a pen more often.

159
• 예전에는 팝뮤직만 들었는데, 지금은 클래식도 들고, 다른 예전 노래들도 들어요. = I used to only listen to pop music but now I also listen to classics and other songs of the past.

• 더운 여름에 시원한 개울가에 자주 놀러갔어요 = When it was hot in summer, we used to go to a cool stream/brook and play around there. **

* 사먹다 = buy and eat
** 놀러가다 = to go and play
I used to do – 하던

하던 means "used to" or it refers to an action or state in the past.

A noun is usually followed by 하던 which describes the noun.

e.g. 여기는 내가 일하던 곳이야 = This is the place where I used to work / had worked.

The past tense form of '하던' is 했던 and it means essentially the same as 하던 when used in this sense.

e.g. 여기는 내가 일하던 곳이야 = 여기는 내가 일했던 곳이야 = This is the place where I used to work / had worked.

Take 다 off verbs/adjectives and add 했던.

•하던 (했든) = used to do
•가던 (갔든) = used to go
•오던 (왔던) = used to come
•다니던 (다녔든) = used to attend
•살던 (살았던) = used to live
•먹던 (먹었던) = used to eat
•높던 (높았던) = used to be tall

Example sentences

•저 빌딩은 내가 다니던 대학이야 = That building is the university/college (building) where I used to attend.

•이건 내가 먹던 과자야 = This is the snack that I was eating.
•이건 내가 예전에 먹던 과자야 = This is the snack I used to eat in the past.

•여기는 링컨이 살던 마을이야 = This is the town where Lincoln used to live / had lived.

•저 타워는 2 년 전 까지만 해도 세계에서 가장 높았던 건물이야 = That tower is the building which used to be the tallest in the world until 2 years ago.

•이 레스토랑은 민재가 자주 갔던 중식집이에요 = This restaurant is the Chinese restaurant where Min-jae used to go often.
(I learned that) ~더라고

더라고(요) is used when you talk about something you've learned by your own experience or from someone else or some other things (e.g. books, TV and internet).

Replace 다 of a plain form of verbs/adjectives with 더라고.

•하다 → 하더라고 = (learned that someone) was doing

Example sentence:

•진수는 음악을 전공하더라고 = I learned that Jinsu was doing a major in music

•가더라고 = (I learned that) was going
•오더라고 = (I learned that) was coming
•먹더라고 = (I learned that) was eating
•마시더라고 = (I learned that) was drinking
•살더라고 = (I learned that) was living
•만들더라고 = (I learned that) was making
•일더라고 = (I learned that) was working
•자더라고 = (I learned that) was sleeping

•높더라고 = (I learned that) was high
•낮더라고 = (I learned that) was low
•크더라고 = (I learned that) was big/large
•작더라고 = (I learned that) was small (in size)
•빠르더라고 = (I learned that) was fast
•느리더라고 = (I learned that) was slow
•많더라고 = (I learned that) was many
•적더라고 = (I learned that) was small (in quantity)

Attach 요 to 더라고 to make it a polite form.

•하더라고요 (Polite spoken form)
•가더라고요
•많더라고요
•크더라고요

Example sentences:

• 급하게 어디를 가더라고요 = (He was) going somewhere in a hurry

• 가린은 목이 길더라고요 = (I learned that) a giraffe has a long neck.
• 큰 배가 항구를 향해 오더라고요 = (I learned/saw that) a big ship was coming towards the port

• 그렇게 생각하니까 편해지더라니까요 = (I learned that) I became (more) relaxed as I think that way

• 생각하니까 편해지더라니까요.
• As I think (like that), (I learned that) I became more relaxed/feel at ease.

• 편하다 = comfortable, relaxing
• 편해지다 = become relaxed

For more transcripts & translations, click this link, Ahn Cheol-Soo Interview: On Joy and Happiness.
(I found that) - ~던데

던데 is used when you found that something was contrary to my previous opinion/expectation or opinions/expectations of others.

For example,
  • 이미 하던데 = (I found that they) were already doing it

Replace 다 of verbs/adjectives with 던데

  • 하던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were doing it
  • 가던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were going (somewhere)
  • 오던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were coming (here)
  • 먹던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were eating
  • 마신던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were drinking
  • 살던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were living (somewhere)
  • 많던데 = (I found that there) were many
  • 적던데 = (I found that they) were small (in quantity)
  • 빠르던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were fast
  • 느리던데 = (I found that he/she/they) was/were slow

Examples sentences

  • 미술관에 사람들 적을 줄 알았는데, 사람들 많던데 = I thought/figured that there won't be many people in the art gallery, but there were many people.

  • 짐 집에 있어? = Is Jim at home?
  • 아니, 아까 어디 가던데 = No, a while ago (I saw him) going somewhere.

  • 크리스마스라 시티에 사람들 많지? = There are many people in the city as it's Christmas, aren't there?
  • 아니, 생각보다 사람들 안 많던데 = No, there weren't as many people as I thought.

You can also use 던데 when you saw someone/something somewhere doing something but now no longer quite sure what happened to them next, i.e. where they are or what they are doing now.

  • 지니 어디 있어?= Where's Jinnie?
  • 아까 샹에서 일하던데 = A while ago, (I saw her) working at the shop. (Though I'm not quite sure where she is or what she's doing now)
•정수 어디 갔어요? = Has Jeong-su gone somewhere?
•응, 친구 만나러 나가던데 = Yes, (I saw him) going out to meet his friend (I don't know about the details of where he is or what he's doing though.)
**I heard / You said - ~며**

며 can mean "I heard" or "You said."

The meaning of 며 depends on the context, i.e. what sentence follows next.

For example,

*정수야, 서울에 간다며? 잘 갔다와.
*Hey, Jeong-su, I heard you're going to Seoul. Have a nice trip!

*정수야, 서울에 간다며. 아직 안갔어?
*Hey, Jeong-su, you said you're going to Seoul. You haven't left yet?

Add 며 to verbs / adjectives.

**한다 (present written form) + 며 = 한다며 = You said you'd do**

•간다며 = I heard you go (are going) / You said you go (are going)
•온다며 = I heard you come / You said come
•먹는다며 = I heard you eat / You said you eat
•마신다며 = I heard you drink / You said you drink
•잠다며 = I heard you sleep / You said you sleep
•일어난다며 = I heard you wake up / get up // You said you wake up / get up
•놀다며 = I heard you play / have fun // You'd said you play / have fun

**했다 (past written form) + 며 = 했다며 = I heard you did / You said you did**

•갔다며 = I heard you go (are going) / You said you go (are going)
•왔다며 = I heard you come / You said come
•먹었다며 = I heard you eat / You said you've eaten
•샀다며 = I heard you buy / You said you've bought

**하자 (let's do) + 며 = 하자며 = You said let's do / I heard you want us to do**

•가자며 = You said let's go / I heard you want us to go
•먹자며 = You said let's eat / I heard you want us to eat
•놀자며 = You said let's play / have fun / I heard you want us to play / have fun
•만들자며 = You said let's make / I heard you want us to make

**Example sentences:**

•상철아, 너 항상 아침 5시 반에 일어난다며. 안 피곤해? = Hey, Sang-cheol, I heard you always get up at 5:30. Aren't you tired?
• Sang-cheol, you said you always get up at 5:30. It's 7 o'clock now.

• Hey Tom, I heard you're going to Nepal tomorrow.

• Hey Min-jeong, I heard you've been to Sydney.

• Hey Jessica, I heard you've eaten a lot of Indian food in India.

• You said let's eat! But you aren't hungry?

• You said let's buy icecream. But why are we going to a cake shop?
There is / I have – 있다/있네

있다 is used colloquially to mean "There is/are" or "I have."

For example,

• 저기에 호수 있다 = There is a lake over there.
• 나 갤럭시 에스쓰리 있다 = I have a Galaxy S3.

Similarly, you could also use "있네" to mean "There is/are" or "I have."

However, 있네 is used when you did not have any prior knowledge of the presence of something or having owned something.

• 저기에 호수 있네 = There is a lake over there. (I didn't know there was a lake over there.)
• 어, 나 지갑 있네 = Oh, I have a wallet. (I thought I didn't have/bring it.)

있다 and 있네 are very similarly used as 있다 is also used when you did not have any prior knowledge of the presence of something.

• 저기에 호수 있네 = There is a lake over there. (= 저기에 호수 있다)

있었네, which is the past tense of 있네, is also frequently used to mean "I had".

• 어, 나 지갑 있네 = Oh, I have a wallet. (I thought I didn't have/bring it.)
• 어, 나 지갑 있었네 = Oh, I had a wallet. (I thought I didn't have/bring it.)

Additionally, 있네/있었네 can be used to mean "I/you/he/she/they have" whereas 있다 is usually used to only mean "I have."

• 어, 너 지갑 있네 = Oh, you have a wallet. (We thought you didn't have/bring your wallet.)
• 어, 진수 지갑 있었네 = Oh, Jinsu had a wallet. (We thought Jinsu didn't have/bring his wallet.)
Examples sentences

•여기 놀이공원 있다 = There's a theme park here. (= 여기 놀이공원 있네)

•나 킨들 있다 = (Hey) I have/own a Kindle.

•어, 나 핸드폰 있네/있었네 = Oh, I had/brought a mobile phone (I thought I forgot to bring it)

•어, 너 갤럭시 노트 있네 = Oh, you have a Galaxy Note.
Special Expression

Are you doing? - ~는 거야? [Informal]

는 거야 is commonly used in situations where you see somebody doing something and you want to ask them what they are doing. Again, 는 거야 can only be used when you are actually watching somebody doing something, and you want to ask them what they are doing.

• Rule

Take 다 off a plain verb and add 는 거야?

- 합니다 → 하는 거야? = Are you doing?
- 가다 → 가는 거야? = Are you going?
- 읽다 → 읽는 거야? = Are you reading?
- 보다 → 보는 거야? = Are you watching?
- 쓰다 → 쓰는 거야? = Are you writing?
- 먹다 → 먹는 거야? = Are you eating?
- 마시다 → 마신 거야? = Are you drinking?
- 자다 → 자는 거야? = Are you sleeping?
- 보내다 → 보내는 거야? = Are you sending?

Eg.

- 일하는 거야? = Are you working?
- 학교 숙제 하는 거야? = Are you doing school homework?
- 점심 먹는 거야? = Are you having lunch?
- 집에 가는 거야? = Are you going home?
- 교회 가는 거야? = Are you going to church?
- 물 마시는 거야? = Are you drinking water?
- 영화 보는 거야? = Are you watching a movie?
- 에세이 쓰는 거야? = Are you writing an essay?
- 문자 메시지 보내는 거야? = Are you sending a txt message?
- 벌써 자는 거야? = Are you sleeping already?

You can add 언제, 어디, 누가, 뭐, 어떻게 or 왜 [when, where, who, what, how or why] in front of ~는 거야? to make these sentences.

- 뭐 하는 거야? = What are you doing?
- 뭐 읽는 거야? = What are you reading?
- 뭐 보는 거야? = What are you watching?
- 뭐 쓰는 거야? = What are you writing?
- 뭐 먹는 거야? = What are you eating?
• 뭐 마시는 거야? = What are you drinking?
• 뭐 보내는 거야? = What are you sending?
• 어디 가는 거야? = Where are you going?
• 누가 자는 거야? = Who is sleeping?
• 누가 하는 거야? = Who is doing?
• 어떻게 쓰는 거야? = How are you writing?
• 왜 하는 거야? = Why are you doing?

Related posts:

• Are you doing? - ~시는 거예요? [Polite]
• Are we doing? - 하는 거야 / 거예요?
Are you doing? - 시는 거예요? [Polite]

시는 거예요 is commonly used in situations where you want to ask somebody what they're doing.

시는 거예요 can only be used when you're actually seeing somebody doing something, and you want to ask them what they are doing.

• Rule

**Take 다 off a plain verb and add 시는 거예요?**

- 하다 → 하시는 거예요? = Are you doing?
- 가다 → 가시는 거예요? = Are you going?
- 읽다 → 읽으시는 거예요? = Are you reading?
- 보다 → 보시는 거예요? = Are you watching?
- 쓰다 → 쓰시는 거예요? = Are you writing?
- 먹다 → 드시는 거예요? = Are you eating?
- 마시다 → 마시는 거예요? = Are you drinking?
- 자다 → 주무시는 거예요? = Are you sleeping?
- 보내다 → 보내시는 거예요? = Are you sending?

**Note: Irregular verbs**

- 워도 → 워시는 거예요? NOT 워시는 거예요?
- 자다 → 주무시는 거예요? NOT 자시는 거예요?
- 먹다 → 드시는 거예요? NOT 먹시는 거예요?

**Eg.**

- 일하시는 거예요? = Are you working?
- 점심 드시는 거예요? = Are you having lunch?
- 점심 먹시는 거예요? = Are you going home?
- 교회 가시는 거예요? = Are you going to church?
- 물 마시는 거예요? = Are you drinking water?
- 영화 보시는 거예요? = Are you watching a movie?
- 에세이 쓰시는 거예요? = Are you writing an essay?
- 문자 메시지 보내시는 거예요? = Are you sending a txt message?
- 별씨 주무시는 거예요? = Are you sleeping already?

You can add 언제, 어디, 누가, 뭐, 어떻게 or 왜 [when, where, who, what, how or why] in front of 시는 거예요? to make these sentences.

- 뭐 하시는 거예요? = What are you doing?
- 뭐 읽으시는 거예요? = What are you reading?
•뭐 보시는 거예요? = What are you watching?
•뭐 쓰시는 거예요? = What are you writing?
•뭐 드시는 거예요? = What are you eating?
•뭐 마시는 거예요? = What are you drinking?
•뭐 보내시는 거예요? = What are you sending?
•어디 가시는 거예요? = Where are you going?
•누가 주무시는 거예요? = Who is sleeping?
•누가 하시는 거예요? = Who is doing?
•어떻게 쓰시는 거예요? = How are you writing?
•왜 하시는 거예요? = Why are you doing?
Are we doing? - 하는 거야 / 거예요?

하는 거야/ 거예요? is usually used when you want to ask someone what you (both singular and plural) are doing, or will be doing immediately.

For example, when you are in a group of people who are doing things as a group, and you want to ask a leader of the group what you all will be doing.

우리 저기 가는 거야? = Are we going there? [Informal]
우리 저기 가는 거예요? = Are we going there? [Polite]

Note: 하는 거야? = Are you/we doing?

HOWEVER, the polite form of "Are you doing?" usually uses "시는 거예요?" whereas the polite form of "Are we doing?" uses "는 거예요?"

See Are you doing? - 하는 거야?, Are you doing? - ~시는 거예요?

• Rule

Take 다 off a plain verb and add 는 거야 / 거예요?

•하다 → 하는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we doing?
•가다 → 가는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we going?
•읽다 → 읽는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we reading?
•보다 → 보는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we watching?
•쓰다 → 쓰는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we writing?
•먹다 → 먹는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we eating?
•마시다 → 마시는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we drinking?
•지다 → 지는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we sleeping?
•보내다 → 보내는 거야 / 거예요? = Are we sending?

Example Sentences

•운동 하는 거예요? = Are (we) exercising?
•저기로 가는 거예요? = Are (we) going there?
•이 차로 가는 거예요? = Are (we) going by this car?
•이거 먹는 거예요? = Are (we) eating this?
•이걸로 먹는 거예요? = Are (we) eating with this?
•여기서 자는 거예요? = Are (we) sleeping here?
•오늘 저 영화 보는 거예요? = Are (we) watching that movie today?
•이걸로 보는 거예요? = Are (we) watching with this?

You can add 언제, 어디, 누가, 뭐, 어떻게 or 왜 [when, where, who, what, how or why] in front of ~시는 거예요? to make these sentences.
• 오늘 우리 뭐 하는 거예요? = What are we doing today?
• 뭐 읽는 거예요? = What are (we) reading?
• 뭐 보는 거예요? = What are (we) watching?
• 뭐 쓰는 거예요? = What are (we) writing?
• 뭐 먹는 거예요? = What are (we) eating?
• 뭐 마시는 거예요? = What are (we) drinking?
• 뭐 보내는 거예요? = What are (we) sending?
• 어디 가는 거예요? = Where are (we) going?
• 어디서 자는 거예요? = Where are (we) sleeping?
• 누가 하는 거예요? = Who is doing?
• 어떻게 쓰는 거예요? = How are (we) writing?
• 왜 하는 거예요? = Why are (we) doing?

More Example Sentences

• 우리 어디 가는 거예요? = Where are we going?
• 아, 지금 시내에 가는 거예요. = Ah, we're going to the city.
• 이 차로 가는 거예요? = Are (we) going by this car?
• 네, 어서 타세요. = Yes, please get in.
• 뭐 먹을 거예요? = What will we eat? **Verbs - Future [Will]**
• 스파게티 먹을 거예요. 스파게티 좋아하세요? = We will eat spaghetti. Do you like it?
• 네, 좋아해요. = Yes, I like it.
Go to do - ~러 가다

~러 가다 is used when you want to express the purpose of going somewhere.

For example,

- 영수는 공부하러 갔어 = Young-su went to study
- 점은 책 빌리러 도서관에 갔어 = Jim went to the library to borrow books

Replace 다 with 러 가다/갔어/갔다/갔어요/갔습니다

- 하러 가다 = go to do
- 보러 가다 = go to watch/see
- 먹으러 가다 = go to eat
- 마시러 가다 = go to drink
- 자러 가다 = go to sleep
- 잡으러 가다 = go to catch
- 사러 가다 = go to buy
- 빌리러 가다 = go to borrow

Example sentences

- 민희는 아이폰 5 를 사러 갔다. = Min-hee went to buy iPhone 5.
- 제시카는 친구들과 바닷가에 고기 잡으러 갔어요 = Jessica went to the seaside with friends to catch fish.

Note: 고기 means 'meat.' Technically, fish is '물고기' but often, just 고기 is used in spoken Korean to refer to 'fish.'

- 진수는 영진이랑 채이랑 저녁 먹으러 나갔어 = Jinsu went out to have dinner with Young-jin and Sam.
- 필승이는 가족이랑 같이 호빗 영화 보러 갔어요 = Pil-seung went to watch the movie, Hobbit, with (his) family.
**To do something - 기 위해**

This is the expression used to show that you purpose to do something. For example,

- 아브라함은 대학 가기 위해 열심히 공부를 했다 = To go to college, Abraham studied hard.

In the sentence above, the reason why Abraham studied hard is because he's purposed to go to college.

- 점심 먹기 위해 레스토랑에 들어갔다 = To eat lunch, we went into the restaurant.

We went into the restaurant because we'd purposed to eat lunch.

Therefore, the clause containing 기 위해 is the reason for doing something revealed in the rest of the sentence.

**Rules**

- Add 위해 to a nominalized verb. Also see ([Nouns - Nominalizing Verbs](#)).

  - 읽기 위해 = To read
  - 쓰기 위해 = To write
  - 듣기 위해 = To listen
  - 말하기 위해 = To speak
  - 가기 위해 = To go
  - 오기 위해 = To come
  - 보기 위해 = To watch
  - 먹기 위해 = To eat
  - 자기 위해 = To sleep
  - 달리기 위해 = To run
  - 사기 위해 = To buy
  - 팔기 위해 = To sell
  - 서기 위해 = To stand
  - 잊기 위해 = To sit
  - 살기 위해 = To live
  - 죽기 위해 = To die

Eg.

- 한글을 읽기 위해 한국어를 공부했다. = To read Korean words, I studied Korean.

- 자유의 여신상을 보기 위해 뉴욕에 갔다. = To see the Statue of Liberty, we went to New York.
• 그녀는 필리핀에 가기 위해 비행기 티켓을 샀다. = To go to the Philippines, she bought a flight ticket.

• 유다에 도착한 루은 시어머니를 돕기 위해 일을 했다 = Ruth, who arrived in Judah, to support her mother-in-law, she worked. (An excerpt from 롯 이야기)}
**Try doing - ~해 보다**

보다 means "see" and ~해 보다 is a special expression which means "try doing". This expression is used very commonly in ordinary conversations.

- **Rule**

Add 보다 to a spoken form of a verb. *(Verbs - Present, Past)*

- 해 보다 = try doing
- 가 보다 = try going
- 먹어 보다 = try eating
- 마셔 보다 = try drinking
- 읽어 보다 = try reading
- 들어 보다 = try listening
- 사 보다 = try buying
- 앉아 보다 = try sitting
- 봤어 보다 = try seeing/looking/watching
- 올라가 보다 = try going up
- 쳐 보다 = try playing (the instrument)

The tables below are showing the written and spoken forms, and their respective positive and negative forms.

Remember that the plain form of verbs is the most basic from which many other forms of verbs derive and the plain form itself is rarely used in both written and spoken Korean.

I have omitted the present negatives for both written and spoken forms because people never use it in this way.

Instead of saying, "don't try eating", people would say, "don't eat" which is 먹지마.

There are two ways of expressing past negatives and one is more common than the other. "안~" form is more commonly used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factual/Declarative (Written)</th>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td>먹어 보다</td>
<td>먹어 본다</td>
<td>먹어 봤다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative</strong></td>
<td>먹어 보지 않다</td>
<td>먹어 보지 않았다</td>
<td>안 먹어 봤다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialogue/Conversation (Spoken)</td>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>먹어 보다</td>
<td>먹어 봐</td>
<td>먹어 봤어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>먹어 보지 않다</td>
<td>먹어 보지 않았어 안 먹어 봤어</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Eg.

• 안나는 중국 음식을 먹어 봤다. = Anna tried eating Chinese food.


• 예전에 먹어 봤어서 코코넛을 또 사 봤다 = Because I tried eating it before, I tried buying a coconut again. (Conjunctions - Because, So)

예전에 = in the past, before
또 = again

• 이 음악을 들어 봤어! = Try listening to this music!

• 이 차를 마셔 봤어! = Try drinking this tea!

• 이 언덕에 올라가 봤고 그리고 푸른하늘을 봤고. = Try going up this hill! And try looking at the blue sky!

• 독일 가 봤어? = Tried going to Germany? (= Have you been to Germany?)

• 이 오래된 소파에 앉아 봤어? = Tried sitting on this old sofa?

• 피아노 쳐 봤어? = Tried playing the piano?

Formal Form

Refer to Verbs - Formal [Present, Past]

Eg.

Written Form

• 먹어 봤다 = try eating
• 먹어 봤습니다 = tried eating
• 먹어 보지 않았습니다 = haven't tried eating
• 안 먹어 봤습니다 = haven't tried eating
**Spoken Form**

- 먹어 봐요 = try eating
- 먹어 봤어요 = tried eating
- 먹어 보지 않았어요 = haven't tried eating
- 안 먹어 봤어요 = haven't tried eating
Of course, I've done it before – 해봤죠

(Of course), I've done it (before) - (당연히) (전에) 해봤죠

- 당연히 = Of course
- 전에 = before
- 해봤죠 = I've done it

Usually, when we use 해봤죠, 당연히 and 전에 are implied and omitted. So if I say, "축구 해봤죠," it means, "(Of course), I've played soccer (before)."

When 축구 해봤죠 is used as a question like "축구 해봤죠?", it means, "You have played soccer before, haven't you?"

해봤죠 is a formal form and 해봤지 is an informal form.

해봤죠 is a contracted form of 해봤지요.

Eg.

• 축구 해봤지. = (Of course), I've played soccer (before). [Informal]
• 축구 해봤지? = You have played soccer (before), haven't you? [Informal]

Usually, 봤죠 form is used as an answer to a question.

Eg.

• 축구 해봤어요? = Have you played soccer (before)?
• 축구 해봤죠 = (Of course), I've played soccer (before).
• 축구 안해봤죠 = (Of course), I haven't played soccer (before).

Alternative answers

• (예), 축구 해봤어요 = (Yea), I've played soccer (before).
• (아뇨), 축구 안해봤어요 = (No), I haven't played soccer (before).

References: Try doing - 해 보다, It's cold, isn't it? - 쥐지요?

Rule

Informal present spoken form of verbs + 봤죠

Eg.

• 해봤죠 = (Of course), I've done it (before)
•먹어봤죠 = (Of course), I've tried[eaten] it (before)
•가봤죠 = (Of course), I've been[gone] there (before)
•사봤죠 = (Of course), I've bought it (before)
•입어봤죠 = (Of course), I've tried it on[worn it] (before)
•살아봤죠 = (Of course), I've lived there (before)

Example Sentences

•(전에) 김치 먹어봤어요? = Have you tried kimchi (before)?
•(당연히) 김치 먹어봤죠. = (Of course), I've tried kimchi (before).
•서울 가봤어요? = Have you been to Seoul (before)?
•서울 가봤죠. = (Of course), I've been to Seoul (before).
•미국에서 살아봤죠. = (Of course), I've lived in the States (before).
•파스타 만들어봤죠. = (Of course), I've made pasta (before). [Therefore, I know how to cook pasta.]
•일본 가봤죠? = You've been to Japan, haven't you?
•중국 안가봤죠? = You haven't been to China, have you?
•카레 안먹어봤죠? = You haven't tried curry before, have you?
•에콰도르에서 안 살아봤죠? = You've never lived in Ecuador before, have you?

Note: Kimchi is traditional Korean food. It is a hot and spicy pickled cabbage dish. Link to photos of kimchi
Give the favour of ~ - ~주다

This is an important lesson because ~주다 is very frequently used in ordinary conversations.

First of all, 주다 means "give" and when we attach the spoken form of a verb in front of 주다, it means someone "give the favour of doing something for someone".

For example, 도와 주다 means "give the favour of helping to somebody" which essentially means "I help someone".

•민희는 엄마를 도와 주었다 = Min-hee gave the favour of helping to Mom. (Min-hee helped Mom)

In the sentence above, Min-hee helped her Mom and this helping has been done to her and for her.

The concept of giving is profound in the Korean language.

In many occasions where somebody does something for somebody or to somebody, the sentences invariably includes ~주다.

● Rule

Attach the spoken form of verbs in front of 주다.

•해 주다 = give the favour of doing
•가 주다 = give the favour of going
•와 주다 = give the favour of coming
•먹어 주다 = give the favour of eating
•마셔 주다 = give the favour of drinking
•읽어 주다 = give the favour of reading
•써 주다 = give the favour of writing
•봐 주다 = give the favour of seeing
•들어 주다 = give the favour of listening
•사 주다 = give the favour of buying
•팔아 주다 = give the favour of selling
•가르쳐 주다 = give the favour of teaching
•도와 주다 = give the favour of helping

Sentences

•영호는 시내까지 같이 가 주었다 = Young-ho gave (me) the favour of going to town together (Young-ho went to town with me.)

시내 = town
같이 = together
• 엘리엇은 우리 집에 와 주었다 = Elliot gave (us) the favour of coming to our home. (Elliot came to our house.)

우리 = we
집 = house

• 나는 동생의 밥을 먹어 주었다 = I gave my little brother/sister the favour of eating his/her meal. (I ate my little brother/sister's meal for them.)

동생 = little sibling (gender neutral)
밥 = meal, rice

• 피파퍼교수님은 우리에게 존 칼빈의 신학을 가르쳐 주었다 = Professor Piper gave the favour of teaching John Calvin's theology to us. (Professor Piper taught us John Calvin's theology.)

교수 = professor
님 = honorary suffix (usually attached to the name of professions which involve teaching)
For eg. 선생님 = teacher, 목사님 = pastor, 교수님 = professor

신학 = theology

• 나에게 편지를 읽어 주었다 = (someone) gave the favour of reading a letter to me.
[(someone) read a letter to me (for me)]

편지 = letter

에게 = PARTICLES - 게/에게/한테

썼다 = the contracted form of 주었다
• 피터는 내 노래를 들어 썼다 = Peter gave the favour of listening to my song. [Peter listened to my song for me.]

노래 = song

썼어 = the contracted form of 주었어 (which is the spoken form of 주었다)
• 어떤 아저씨가 도와 썼어요 = Some middle-aged man gave the favour of helping to me (Some middle-aged man helped me.)

어떤 ~ = some ~ (random, passer-by)

어저씨 = middle-aged man (a general term for every married men or men aged between approximately 27 to 55 years of age.

On a side note, some men who are actually young get offended if some children call him 어저씨 because that means that young man looks older than he actually is.)
어떤 아줌마 = some middle-aged woman

아줌마 = a middle-aged woman (a general term for every married women or women aged between approximately 27 to 55 years of age.

Again, almost all women who are actually young get offended or even hurt if some people call her 아줌마 because that means that young lady looks old. Let us have some discernment.)

어떤 아이 = some child
Would you like to go? - 갈래요?

~을(ㄹ)래요? is used when you express your desire to do something together with someone, or when you want someone to do something. So it is similar to "Would you like to do something?/Do you want to do something?" in English.

- **Rule**

1. For verbs without a final consonant, **add 래요**.
   - 하다 = 할래요? = Would you like to do?
   - 가다 = 갈래요? = Would you like to go?
   - 사다 = 산래요? = Would you like to buy?
   - 마시다 = 마실래요? = Would you like to drink?

2. For verbs with a final consonant, **add 을래요**.
   - 먹다 = 먹을래요? = Would you like to eat?
   - 앉다 = 앉을래요? = Would you like to sit?
   - 읽다 = 읽을래요? = Would you like to read?

Eg.

커피 마실래요? = Would you like to drink coffee?
점심 먹을래요? = Would you like to eat lunch?
극장에 같이 갈래요? = Would like to go to the cinema together?

극장 = cinema, theatre
점심 = lunch, noon
같이 = together

**Note:** If you omit 요 off 을(ㄹ)래요, ie. 을(ㄹ)래 it becomes an informal form.

커피 마실래? = Would you like to drink coffee?
점심 먹을래? = Would you like to eat lunch?
극장에 같이 갈래? = Would like to go to the cinema together?
Shall we do something? - 우리 뭐 할까?

Rules

1. For verbs without a final consonant, attach 를 as a final consonant and add 까.

   eg. 사다 → 살까? = Shall we buy?

2. For verbs with a final consonant, attach 을까.

   eg. 입다 → 입을까? = shall we wear?

Irregular

eg. 들다 → 들을까?

   •하다 → 할까? = Shall we do?
   •가다 → 갈까? = Shall we go?
   •먹다 → 먹을까? = Shall we eat?
   •마시다 → 마실까? = Shall we drink?
   •보다 → 볼까? = Shall we watch?
   •들다 → 들을까? = Shall we listen to?
   •놀다 → 놀까? = Shall we hang out/muck around?

Example Sentences

   •우리 놀이공원에 갈까? = Shall we go to a theme park?
   •우리 스타벅스에서 커피 마실까? = Shall we drink coffee at Starbucks?
   •우리 점심 먹으러 갈까? = Shall we go have lunch together?
   •해리포터 영화 보러 갈까? = Shall we go watch the Harry Potter movie?
   •우리 운동하러 헬스장 갈까? = Shall we go to a gym to exercise?

Note: Attach 요 to 를/을 까 to make it formal.

   •우리 놀이공원에 갈까요? = Shall we go to a theme park?
   •우리 스타벅스에서 커피 마실까요? = Shall we drink coffee at Starbucks?
   •우리 점심 먹으러 갈까요? = Shall we go have lunch together?
   •해리포터 영화 보러 갈까요? = Shall we go watch the Harry Potter movie?
   •우리 운동하러 헬스장 갈까요? = Shall we go to a gym to exercise?
It's cold, isn't it? - 춥지요?

지요 is used similarly to "isn't it?" of English. For example, 춥다 means "cold", and 춥지요 means "It's cold, isn't it? or It's cold, eh? or It's cold, right?"

This is used when you want to chat up somebody or when you are looking for a confirmation.

- Rule

Take 다 off an adjective and add 지요 to it.

• 춥다 → 춥지요 = It's cold, isn't it?
• 덥다 → 덥지요 = It's hot, isn't it?
• 많다 → 많지요 = There is a lot, isn't there?
• 작다 → 작지요 = There is little, isn't there?
• 높다 → 높지요 = It's high, isn't it?
• 낮다 → 낮지요 = It's low, isn't it?
• 크다 → 크지요 = It's large, isn't it?
• 작다 → 작지요 = It's small, isn't it?
• 좋다 → 좋지요 = It's good, isn't it?
• 나쁘다 → 나쁘지요 = It's bad, isn't it?
• 길다 → 길지요 = It's deep, isn't it?
• 맛있다 → 맛있지요 = It's delicious, isn't it?

Note: 지요 is often contracted to 죽 in speech. Therefore 춥지요 → 춥죠.

• 춥죠 = It's cold, isn't it?
• 덥죠 = It's hot, isn't it?
• 많죠 = There is a lot, isn't there?
• 작죠 = There is little, isn't there?
• 높죠 = It's high, isn't it?
• 낮죠 = It's low, isn't it?
• 크죠 = It's large, isn't it?
• 작죠 = It's small, isn't it?
• 좋죠 = It's good, isn't it?
• 나쁘죠 = It's bad, isn't it?
• 길죠 = It's very deep, isn't?
• 맛있죠 = It's delicious, isn't it?

Example sentences

날씨가 춥죠? = The weather is cold, isn't it?
태국 날씨가 되게 덥죠? = The weather in Thailand is very hot, isn't it?
한라산이 높죠? = Mount Halla is high, isn't it?
강물이 정말 깊죠? = The river water is very deep, right?
집이 작죠? = The house is small, eh?
김치가 맛있죠? = Kimchi is delicious, isn't it?

날씨 = weather
태국 = Thailand
한라산 = Mount Halla
강물 = river water
집 = house
김치 = kimchi (A traditional Korean fermented dish made of cabbages with spicy seasonings)
Let's do it - 하자

This should be easy to learn. Just replace 다 of a plain verb with 자 to make a phrase, "Let's (verb)". **Note:** This is an informal form.

- 하다 → 하자 = Let's do it
- 먹다 → 먹자 = Let's eat
- 마시다 → 마시자 = Let's drink
- 가다 → 가자 = Let's go
- 앉다 → 앉자 = Let's sit
- 보다 → 보자 = Let's see
- 웃다 → 웃자 = Let's read
- 쓰다 → 쓰자 = Let's write
- 들다 → 들자 = Let's listen
- 달리다 → 달리자 = Let's run
- 걷다 → 걷자 = Let's walk
- 사다 → 사자 = Let's buy
- 팔다 → 팔자 = Let's sell

**Example Sentences**

우리 = we
같이 = together

• (우리)(같이) 농구 하자 = Let's do basketball. (Let's play basketball)
• (우리)(같이) 피자 먹자 = Let's eat a pizza (together)
• (우리)(같이) 커피 마시자 = Let's drink coffee (together)
• (우리)(같이) 바닷가 가자 = Let's go to beach (together)
• (우리)(같이) 범치에 앉자 = Let's sit on the bench (together)
• (우리)(같이) 영화 보자 = Let's watch a movie (together)
• (우리)(같이) 교과서 읽자 = Let's read a textbook (together)
• (우리)(같이) 아이조 듣자 = Let's listen to ipod (together)
• (우리)(같이) 새 신발 사자 = Let's buy new shoes (together)
• (우리)(같이) 저 냉장고 팔자 = Let's sell that fridge (together)

The formal form of "Let's (verb)" is exactly the same as that of the formal spoken present form. You may want to refer to Verbs - Formal [Present, Past] "Please" is implied in the phrase.

• 하다 → 해요 = (Please.) Let's do it
• 먹다 → 먹어요 = (Please.) Let's eat
• 마시다 → 마셔요 = (Please.) Let's drink
• 가다 → 가요 = (Please.) Let's go
• 앉다 → 앉아요 = (Please.) Let's sit
• 보다 → 보어요 = (Please.) Let's see
• 웃다 → 웃어요 = (Please.) Let's read
• 쓰다 → 써요 = (Please.) Let's write
• 들다 → 들어요 = (Please.) Let's listen
• 달리다 → 달려요 = (Please.) Let's run
• 걷다 → 걸어요 = (Please.) Let's walk
• 사다 → 사요 = (Please.) Let's buy
• 팔다 → 팔아요 = (Please.) Let's sell

Example Sentences
우리 = we
같이 = together

• (우리) (같이) 농구 해요 = [Please] Let's do basketball (Let's play basketball)
• (우리) (같이) 피자 먹어요 = [Please] Let's eat a pizza (together)
• (우리) (같이) 피자 먹어요 = [Please] Let's go to beach (together)
• (우리) (같이) 벤치에 앉아요 = [Please] Let's sit on the bench (together)
• (우리) (같이) 영화 봐요 = [Please] Let's watch a movie (together)
• (우리) (같이) 교과서 읽어요 = [Please] Let's read a textbook (together)
• (우리) (같이) 아이포드 들어요 = [Please] Let's listen to ipod (together)
• (우리) (같이) 새 신발 사요 = [Please] Let's buy new shoes (together)
• (우리) (같이) 저 냉장고 팔아요 = [Please] Let's sell that fridge (together)
Easy to do / Difficult to do - ~기 쉽다 / ~기 어렵다

This one is easy to learn. All you need to do is attach a nominalized verb to 쉽다 or 어렵다 to say that something is easy or difficult.

Written Forms

•하기 쉽다 = easy to do
•이해하기 쉽다 = easy to understand
•풀기 쉽다 = easy to solve
•보기 쉽다 = easy to see
•듣기 쉽다 = easy to listen
•말하기 쉽다 = easy to say
•가기 쉽다 = easy to go

Spoken Forms

•하기 쉬워 = easy to do
•이해하기 쉬워 = easy to understand
•풀기 쉬워 = easy to solve
•보기 쉬워 = easy to see
•듣기 쉬워 = easy to listen
•말하기 쉬워 = easy to say
•가기 쉬워 = easy to go

Written Forms

•하기 어렵다 = difficult to do
•이해하기 어렵다 = difficult to understand
•풀기 어렵다 = difficult to solve
•보기 어렵다 = difficult to see
•듣기 어렵다 = difficult to listen
•말하기 어렵다 = difficult to say
•가기 어렵다 = difficult to go

Spoken Forms

•하기 어려워 = difficult to do
•이해하기 어려워 = difficult to understand
•풀기 어려워 = difficult to solve
•보기 어려워 = difficult to see
•듣기 어려워 = difficult to listen
•말하기 어려워 = difficult to say
•가기 어려워 = difficult to go
Eg.

이 문제 풀어봤어? = Have you tried solving this problem? [Try doing - 해 보다]
어. 이 문제는 정말 풀기 어려워. = Yes. This problem is really difficult to solve.

우리 서커스 보러 가자. = Let's go watch a circus.
사람들이 너무 많아서 보기 어려워 = Because of the crowd, it's difficult to see.

여자는 이해하기 어려워요 = It's difficult to understand woman.
아니에요. 남자가 더 이해하기 어려워요 = No. Man is more difficult to understand.
그렇게 생각해요? = Do you think so?
네. 정말 그렇게 생각해요. = Yes. I surely do.

제 말 들리세요? = Can you hear me?
아니요. 음악 소리 때문에 들기 어려워요. = No. Because of the sound of music, it's difficult to hear.

낚시 가르쳐 주세요 = please teach me how to do fishing [Give the favour of doing - 해 주다]
그래요. 낚시는 하기 쉬워요. = Ok. Fishing is easy to do.

문제 = problem
풀다 = solve
풀어보다 = try solving
서커스 = circus
남자 = man
여자 = woman
생각하다 = think
그렇게 생각하다 = think so
정말 = really, very
너무 = very
음악 = music
소리 = sound
낚시 = fishing
I know how - 어떻게 하는지 알아

I (don't) know how - 어떻게 하는지 알아/몰라

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written Form</th>
<th>I know how to do</th>
<th>I don't know how to do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Informal</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 안다</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 모른다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 않나다</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 모르나요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spoken Form</th>
<th>I know how to do</th>
<th>I don't know how to do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Informal</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 알아</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 몰라</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 알아요</td>
<td>어떻게 하는지 몰라요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: I include the written form of this expression for the sake of completeness. However, please focus on the spoken form as the expression is mainly used in conversations.

Rules

1. Take 다 off a plain form/past tense of verbs and attach 는지 알아.
   (Exception: For those verbs which contain 라 as a final consonant, take it off. eg. 만들다 → 만들지 알아)

2. Attach 요 to 알아/몰라 to turn it into a formal form.

   • 어떻게 하는지 알아 = I know how to do
   • 어떻게 먹는지 알아 = I know how to eat
   • 어떻게 가는지 알아 = I know how to go
   • 어떻게 보는지 알아 = I know how to see
   • 어떻게 듣는지 알아 = I know how to listen
   • 어떻게 사용하는지 알아 = I know how to use
   • 어떻게 만들지 알아 = I know how to make
   • 어떻게 입는지 알아 = I know how to wear
   • 어떻게 하는지 몰라 = I don't know how to do
   • 어떻게 가는지 몰라 = I don't know how to go
Example sentences

• 용준이는 김치찌개 어떻게 만드는지 알아요. = Yong-jun knows how to make(cook) kimchi stew.

• "줄리아! 라면 어떻게 끓이는지 알아?" = "Julia! Do you know how to boil(cook) noodle soup?"

• 내가 이 큰 물고기 어떻게 잡았는지 알아? 이 물고기가 힘이 좋아서 정말 힘들게 잡았어.
  = Do you know how I caught this big fish? This fish has good strength and so I caught it
  with a lot of effort.

• 저는 너무 어떻게 심는지 알아요. = I know how to plant a tree.

• 이 리모콘 어떻게 사용하는지 알아? = Do you know how to use this remote controller?

• 서울에 어떻게 가는지 아세요? = Do you know how to go(get) to Seoul?

• 부산에 어떻게 가는지 몰라. = I don't know how to go to Busan.

• 넥타이 어떻게 매는지 몰라요. = I don't know how to tie a necktie.

• 할아버지의 문자 어떻게 보내는지 모르세요. = Grandpa doesn't know how to send a text message.

Note: 아세요 and 모르세요 are honorific forms of 알아 and 몰라 respectively. 아세요 and 모르세요 are only used for second- and third-persons.

For example,

• I know how to use the subway.
  • 전 지하철 어떻게 이용하는지 아세요.
  • 전 지하철 어떻게 이용하는지 알아요.

• Do you know how to use the subway?
  • 지하철 어떻게 이용하는지 아세요?

• He/she already knows how to use the subway.
  • 별써 지하철 어떻게 이용하는지 아세요.
Habitually (Made/compelled to) - ～되면～게 돼요

This phrase has two parts. The first part is ～게 되면, and the second part is ～게 돼요.

The meaning of "～게 되면" is equivalent to "when(ever) or if," and that of "～게 돼요" is equivalent to "am made/compelled to" or "habitually(usually)."

For example,

• 음식점에 가게 되면, 비빔밥을 주문하게 돼요 = When(ever) I go to a restaurant, I am made/compelled to order a bibimbap. (I habitually/usually order a bibimbap.)

음식점 = a restaurant
가다 = go
가게 되면 = When(if) I go
비빔밥 = a Korean dish (The dish consists of rice with various kinds of vegetables, beef(usually mince), fried egg, Korean red chili paste and sesame oil.)
주문 = order (n.)
주문하다 = order (v.)
주문하게 돼요 = I habitually order

Note: The plain form of 되면 and 돼요 is '되다' which means 'to become.' Therefore, the literal translation of the sentence above is:

• 음식점에 가게 되면, 비빔밥을 주문하게 돼요 = When(ever) it becomes that I go to a restaurant, it becomes that I order bibimbap

Also, in the first part when a noun is used instead of a verb, 이/가 되면 is used instead.

For example,

• 아침이 되면, 신문을 보게 된다 = When it is morning, I habitually(usually) read a newspaper

The literal translation of the sentence above is, "When it 'becomes' morning, I 'become' reading a newspaper."

The sentence doesn't make sense grammatically in English but I hope the literal translation will help you get the nuance of the phrase.

Conjugation rule

Take 다 off a plain form of verbs and attach 게 되면/게 돼요 to it.

하다(do) → 하게 되면 = When(ever) I do
하다(do) → 하게 돼요 = I habitually/usually do (or I am made/compelled to do)

•하게 돼요 = I habitually do
•가게 돻요 = I habitually go
•오게 돻요 = I habitually come
•먹게 돻요 = I habitually eat
•자게 돻요 = I habitually sleep
•말하게 돻요 = I habitually speak
•들게 돻요 = I habitually listen
•보게 돻요 = I habitually watch

Example Sentences

•늦은 밤이되면, 아이스크림을 먹게 돻요 = When(ever) it is late at night, I habitually eat an icecream

•정오가 되면 졸려서 낮잠 자게 돻요 = When(ever) it is noon, because I'm tired(sleepy), I habitually have a nap (Lit. sleep a nap).

•컴퓨터만 키게 돻면, 음악을 듣게 돻요 = When(ever) I turn on the computer, I habitually listen to music.

•시내만 나가게 되면, 영화를 보게 돻요 = When(ever) I go to town, I habitually go to movies (Lit. watch movies).

•운동만 하게 되면, 물을 많이 마시게 돻요 = When(ever) I exercise, I habitually drink a lot of water.

Usually

As a side note, when you would like express something that you "usually" do and not what you are "made/compelled to" do, "주로" is often used.

For example,

•음식점에 가면, "주로" 비빔밥을 주문해요 = When I go to a restaurant, I usually order a bibimbap. (There is no nuance of being "made/compelled to" order a bibimbap.)

•운동하고 나서는 "주로" 물을 많이 마셔요 = After exercise, I usually drink a lot of water. (Some people may not drink a lot of water and other people may not drink water at all but as for me, I "usually"(whether "I'm made/compelled to" or not, we do not know) drink a lot of water.)
• 시내에 나가면 주로 영화를 보어요 = When I go to town, I usually go to movies. (*Lit.* watch movies)

• 학교에는 주로 걸어요 = I usually walk to school.

• 회사에는 주로 차로 가요 = I usually go to work by car.
Because I'm ~거든요

거든요 is used as a statement in which you give reasons / explanations for what you do or did.

• 하거든요 = Because (I) do

거든요 is a polite spoken form
거든 is an informal spoken form (however, if 거든 is used in the middle of a sentence (i.e. as a conjunction, linking two sentences), it means 'if')

For example,

• 볼써 왔어? = You came (back) already?
• 줄이 너무 길었거든. 그래서 그냥 왔어 = Because the queue was too long. So I just came (back).

• 줄이 너무 길거든, 그냥 와 = If the queue is too long, just come (back).

Take 다 off verbs/adjectives and add 거든요.

• 하다 → 하거든요 = Because (I) do
• 했다 → 했거든요 = Because (I) did
• 먹었거든요 = Because (I) ate
• 가거든요 = Because (I) go
• 갔거든요 = Because (I) went
• 왔거든요 = Because (he) came
• 많았거든요 = Because (there) were many
• 배고팠거든요 = Because (I) was hungry
• 빠르거든요 = Because (it's) fast
• 맛있거든요 = Because (it's) delicious

E.g.
• 아침 안 먹어요? = Don't you have breakfast?
• 네, 어제 저녁을 너무 많이 먹었거든요. = Yeah no, (because) I ate too much for dinner last night.

Note: 네 means 'yes.' 네 is used when you agree with the statement of the questioner.

• Don't you have breakfast? 네. (Yeah, I won't have breakfast)

Although in English, we say 'yes' to a negative question to mean a positive answer, 'no' is used in Korean to mean a positive answer (i.e. 'no' is used to mean a 'double negative' (= positive)).
• Don't you have breakfast? Yes, I'll have breakfast (in English)
• Don't you have breakfast? 아뇨, 먹을 거예요 = No, I will have breakfast (in Korean)

아뇨 is a contracted form of 아니오 which means 'no.'

Example sentences

• 새 노트북 샀네요? = (Hey,) you bought a new laptop
• 네, 예전 노트북은 너무 느렸거든요. 그래서 새 노트북 샀어요 = Yeah, (because) the laptop I had before was too slow. So I bought a new laptop.

• 여기 레스토랑 음식이 진짜 맛있거든요. 여기서 먹을래? = (Because) this restaurant's food is really delicious. Shall we eat here?
• 그래, 좋지. = Yeah, I'd like to.

• 피곤해 보여요 = You look tired
• 어제 잠을 많이 못자겠어요 = (Because) I didn't have much sleep last night.

• 되게 신나 보여요 = You look very excited!
• 예, 내일 홍콩으로 여행 가거요 = Yeah, (because) I'm going on a trip to Hong Kong tomorrow!

새 (a simplified form of 새로운) = new
사다 = buy
샀다 = bought
샀네요 = (hey, you) bought
노트북 = laptop (literally, notebook)
느리다 = slow
느렸다 = was slow
그래 = ok, yeah
잠 = sleep (noun)
자다 = sleep (verb)
썼다 = slept
피곤하다 = tired
피곤해 보이다 = look tired
되게 = very
신나다 = excited
홍콩 = Hong Kong
여행 가다 = go on a trip
**I will go first** - 먼저 갈게

먼저 갈게 is used colloquially to mean 'you will go home/leave first.'

It's used when you leave a place before your friend(s).

For example,

After school/work, if you leave first before others, you may say:

• 나 먼저 갈게, 내일 보자 = I will leave/go home first. See you tomorrow.

Likewise,

• 먼저 + Verb (Take off 다 and add 게 for verbs without final consonants, and 을게 for verbs with final consonants)

E.g.

• 한다 → 할게
  • 먼저 할게 = I'll do first

• 먹다 → 먹을게
  • 먼저 먹을게 = I'll eat first

• 먼저 할게 = I will do first
• 먼저 갈게 = I will go first
• 먼저 볼게 = I will watch/see first
• 먼저 먹을게 = I will eat first
• 먼저 마실게 = I will drink first
• 먼저 자러 갈게 = I will go to sleep first
• 먼저 살게 = I will buy first

**Example sentences**

• 나 먼저 이 물 마실게 = I will drink this water first

• 졸려서 나 먼저 자러 갈게 = Because I'm sleepy, I'll go to sleep first

• 너 배 안고프면 나 먼저 먹을게 = If you're not hungry, I'll eat first

• 지금 이 책 안읽으면 나 먼저 볼게 = If you're not reading this book, I'll read it first
Today, Because I gotta get home early. I'll go (home) first. See you tomorrow.
Phrases

As I was doing -  ~하다 보니깐

~하다 보니깐 means "As I have been/was doing (something)"

This phrase is used when you want to convey a nuanced meaning of "you've been doing something, and learned / found / experienced / saw / heard something along the way."

하다 보니깐 is actually a contracted form of 하다 보니까는

• 하다 보니까 = As I have been/was doing (something)
• 가다 보니까 = As I have been/was going (somewhere)
• 오다 보니까 = As I have been/was coming (somewhere)
• 살아 보니까 = As I have been/was living (this way)
• 먹다 보니까 = As I have been/was eating

Example Sentences:

• 살다 보니까, 무조건 열심히만 한다고 성공하는 건 아닙니까요 = As I have been living (until now), I learned that hard work alone may not bring success.

• 살다 보니까, 노력없이는 성공의 꿈조차 꿀 수 없다는 걸 깨달았다 = As I have been living (until now), I learned / understood that without hard work, you cannot even dream of success.

• 가다 보니까, 오른쪽에 동물원이 있더라고 = As I was going (somewhere), there was a zoo on my right-hand side.

• 먹다 보니까, 이미 늦었더라고요 = As I was eating, I found that I was already late.

• 그러다 보니까, 나는 최선을 다하고 나머지 결과는 기다리고, 운이 좋거나, 사회가 허락하면 좋은 결과가 있는 거구요 = As I have been like that, I just do my best and wait for results, and if luck finds its way to me, or the society finds me helpful, I get good results.

To Listen to How 하다 보니깐 is Used, Watch This Interview:
• Ahn Cheol-Soo Interview: On Joy and Happiness
Other Lessons

Addressing People

Addressing friend's name

When a person is addressed 아/야 is attached to their name. If my name were 진우[Jin-u], my friend would call me, 진우야 [Jin-u-ya]. This is like "Hey 진우/Jin-u!"

This colloquialism should only be used between close friends. This is an informal expression. At school, friends call each other this way, and teachers to students but not vice versa.

Note that 아 is used for names without a final consonant and 야 for names with a final consonant.

Eg.
• 진욱 → 진욱야!

This is pronounced [지욱가:Ji-uk-ga] since ㅇ has no sound when used as an initial consonant.
• 진우 → 진우야!

It is pronounced [지우야:Ji-woo-ya]
• 영희 → 영희야!
• 철수 → 철수야!
• 경일 → 경일야!

So when you call your Korean friend's name, just add 아/야 to their name.

Pronunciation

Here is the link to the Pronunciation posts on Learn Korean: LP's Korean Language Learning.